# MATRIX ANALYSIS

# Through Coordinate Geometry

G. V. V. Sharma



Copyright ©2022 by G. V. V. Sharma.

https://creative commons.org/licenses/by-sa/3.0/

 $\quad \text{and} \quad$ 

 $\rm https://www.gnu.org/licenses/fdl-1.3.en.html$ 

# **Contents**

Intro	oduction	iii
1 V	Vectors	1
1.1	Distance Formula	1
1.2	Section Formula	10
1.3	Properties	11
1.4	Scalar Product	13
1.5	Area of a Triangle	17
1.6	Vector Product	19
1.7	Miscellaneous Exercises	21
1.8	Line Preliminaries	28
2 I	ine	45
2.1	Equation of a Line	45
2.2	General Equation of a Line	59
2.3	Miscellaneous Exercises	65
3 (	Circles	67
3.1	Equation	67
3.2	Construction of Tangents to a Circle	75

<b>4</b> 7	Triangle Constructions	83
4.1	Introduction	83
4.2	Properties	90
5	Quadrilateral Construction	103
5.1	Properties	103
5.2	Mid Point Theorem	117
5.3	Parallelograms	125
5.4	Triangles and Parallelograms	131
6 (	Circle Construction	135
6.1	Equal Chords	135
6.2	Inscribed Polygons	137
6.3	Tangent to a Circle	138
6.4	Tangents from a Point	141
7 (	Conics	151
7.1	Parabola	151
7.2	Ellipse	151
7.3	Hyperbola	151
7.4	Miscellaneous	151
8 I	ntersection of Conics	157
8.1	Chords	157
8.2	Curves	169

8.3	Miscellaneous	174
9 T	Cangent And Normal	189
9.1	Properties	189
9.2	Miscellaneous	205
$\mathbf{A}$	Vectors	209
<b>A</b> .1	$2\times 1$ vectors	209
<b>A</b> .2	$3\times 1$ vectors	217
вм	$\Lambda$ atrices	219
B.1	Eigenvalues and Eigenvectors	219
B.2	Determinants	220
B.3	Rank of a Matrix	221
B.4	Inverse of a Matrix	222
B.5	Orthogonality	222
C L	inear Forms	<b>225</b>
<b>C</b> .1	Two Dimensions	225
<b>C</b> .2	Three Dimensions	230
DG	Quadratic Forms	241
	Conic equation	241
D.2	Circles	246
D.3	Standard Form	249

E C	Conic Parameters	255
E.1	Standard Form	255
E.2	Quadratic Form	257
F C	Conic Lines	<b>259</b>
F.1	Pair of Straight Lines	259
F.2	Intersection of Conics	262
F.3	Chords of a Conic	263
F.4	Tangent and Normal	269

# Introduction

This book links high school coordinate geometry to linear algebra and matrix analysis through solved problems.

# Chapter 1

# Vectors

## 1.1. Distance Formula

- 1.1.1 Find the distances between the following pairs of points:
  - (a) (2,3),(4,1)
  - (b) (-5,7), (-1,3)
  - (c) (a,b), (-a,-b)
- 1.1.2 Find the distance between the points (0,0) and (36,15).
- 1.1.3 Determine if the points (1,5), (2,3) and (-2,-11) are collinear.

Solution: We know that points A, B and C are collinear, if

$$\operatorname{rank} \begin{pmatrix} \mathbf{A}^{\top} \\ \mathbf{B}^{\top} \\ \mathbf{C}^{\top} \end{pmatrix} = 1 \tag{1.1.3.1}$$

Since

$$\begin{pmatrix} \mathbf{A}^{\top} \\ \mathbf{B}^{\top} \\ \mathbf{C}^{\top} \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 5 \\ 2 & 3 \\ -2 & -11 \end{pmatrix}$$
 (1.1.3.2)

$$\stackrel{R_2 \to R_2 - 2R_1}{\underset{R_3 \to R_3 + 2R_1}{\longleftrightarrow}} \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 5 \\ 0 & -7 \\ 0 & -1 \end{pmatrix} \stackrel{R_3 \to R_3 - \frac{1}{7}R_2}{\underset{R_3 \to R_3 - \frac{1}{7}R_2}{\longleftrightarrow}} \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 5 \\ 0 & -7 \\ 0 & 0 \end{pmatrix}, \tag{1.1.3.3}$$

the rank of the matrix is 2. From (1.1.3.1), the points are not collinear. This is verified by Fig. 1.1.3.1, where the given points constitute a triangle and not a line.

- 1.1.4 Check whether (5, -2), (6, 4) and (7, -2) are the vertices of an isosceles triangle.
- 1.1.5 Name the type of quadrilateral formed, if any, by the following points, and give reasons for your answer

(a) 
$$(-1,-2),(1,0),(-1,2),(-3,0)$$

(b) 
$$(-3,5), (-3,1), (0,3), (-1,-4)$$

(c) 
$$(4,5), (7,6), (4,3), (1,2)$$

#### Solution:

(a) The coordinates are given as

$$\mathbf{A} = \begin{pmatrix} -1 \\ -2 \end{pmatrix}, \mathbf{B} = \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 0 \end{pmatrix}, \mathbf{C} = \begin{pmatrix} -1 \\ 2 \end{pmatrix} \text{ and } \mathbf{D} = \begin{pmatrix} -3 \\ 0 \end{pmatrix}$$
 (1.1.5.1)

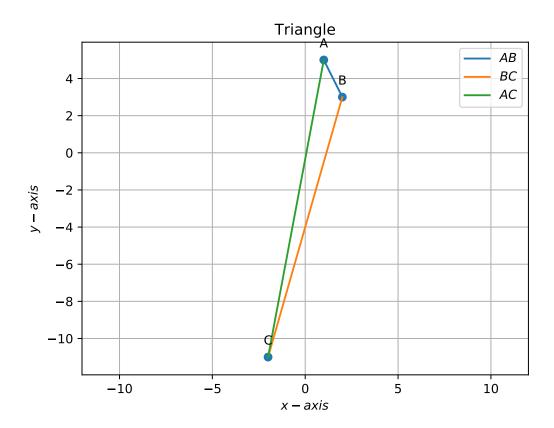


Figure 1.1.3.1:

$$\mathbf{B} - \mathbf{A} = \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 0 \end{pmatrix} - \begin{pmatrix} -1 \\ -2 \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} 2 \\ 2 \end{pmatrix} \tag{1.1.5.2}$$

$$\mathbf{C} - \mathbf{B} = \begin{pmatrix} -1\\2 \end{pmatrix} - \begin{pmatrix} 1\\0 \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} -2\\2 \end{pmatrix} \tag{1.1.5.3}$$

$$\mathbf{B} - \mathbf{A} = \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 0 \end{pmatrix} - \begin{pmatrix} -1 \\ -2 \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} 2 \\ 2 \end{pmatrix}$$

$$\mathbf{C} - \mathbf{B} = \begin{pmatrix} -1 \\ 2 \end{pmatrix} - \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 0 \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} -2 \\ 2 \end{pmatrix}$$

$$\mathbf{C} - \mathbf{D} = \begin{pmatrix} -1 \\ 2 \end{pmatrix} - \begin{pmatrix} -3 \\ 0 \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} 2 \\ 2 \end{pmatrix}$$

$$(1.1.5.2)$$

$$(1.1.5.3)$$

$$\mathbf{D} - \mathbf{A} = \begin{pmatrix} -3 \\ 0 \\ 2 \end{pmatrix} - \begin{pmatrix} -1 \\ -2 \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} -2 \\ 2 \end{pmatrix} \tag{1.1.5.5}$$

$$\mathbf{C} - \mathbf{A} = \begin{pmatrix} -1 \\ 2 \end{pmatrix} - \begin{pmatrix} -1 \\ -2 \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} 0 \\ 4 \end{pmatrix} \tag{1.1.5.6}$$

$$\mathbf{D} - \mathbf{B} = \begin{pmatrix} -3\\0 \end{pmatrix} - \begin{pmatrix} 1\\0 \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} -4\\0 \end{pmatrix} \tag{1.1.5.7}$$

$$\mathbf{B} - \mathbf{A} = \mathbf{C} - \mathbf{D} \text{ and } \mathbf{C} - \mathbf{B} = \mathbf{D} - \mathbf{A}. \tag{1.1.5.8}$$

Hence, ABCD is a parallelogram.

i. Now checking if the adjacent sides are orthogonal to each other

$$(\mathbf{B} - \mathbf{A})^{\top} (\mathbf{C} - \mathbf{B}) = \begin{pmatrix} 2 & 2 \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} -2 \\ 2 \end{pmatrix} = -4 + 4 = 0$$
 (1.1.5.9)

ii. Now checking if the diagonals are also orthogonal then it is a square else a rectangle.

$$(\mathbf{C} - \mathbf{A})^{\top} (\mathbf{D} - \mathbf{B}) = \begin{pmatrix} 0 & 4 \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} -4 \\ 0 \end{pmatrix} = 0$$
 (1.1.5.10)

Hence the diagonals are orthogonal to each other.

So, we can conclude that ABCD is a square.

As shown in Figure 1.1.5.1 we can see that ABCD is a square hence we can conclude that our theoritical result is verified.

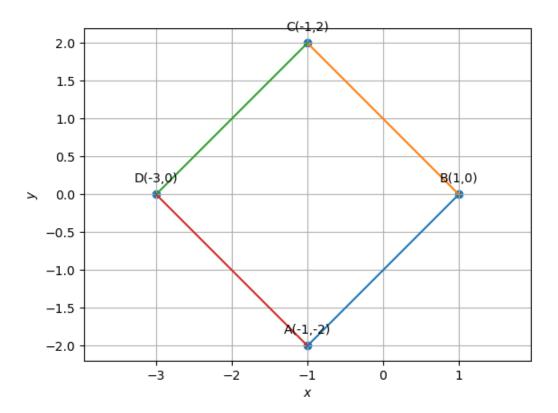


Figure 1.1.5.1:

(b) The coordinates are given as

$$\mathbf{A} = \begin{pmatrix} -3 \\ 5 \end{pmatrix}, \mathbf{B} = \begin{pmatrix} 3 \\ 1 \end{pmatrix}, \mathbf{C} = \begin{pmatrix} 0 \\ 3 \end{pmatrix} \text{ and } \mathbf{D} = \begin{pmatrix} -1 \\ -4 \end{pmatrix}$$
 (1.1.5.11)

$$\mathbf{B} - \mathbf{A} = \begin{pmatrix} 3 \\ 1 \end{pmatrix} - \begin{pmatrix} -3 \\ 5 \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} 6 \\ -4 \end{pmatrix} \tag{1.1.5.12}$$

$$\mathbf{C} - \mathbf{B} = \begin{pmatrix} 0 \\ 3 \end{pmatrix} - \begin{pmatrix} 3 \\ 1 \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} -3 \\ 2 \end{pmatrix} \tag{1.1.5.13}$$

$$\mathbf{C} - \mathbf{D} = \begin{pmatrix} 0 \\ 3 \end{pmatrix} - \begin{pmatrix} -1 \\ -4 \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 7 \end{pmatrix} \tag{1.1.5.14}$$

$$\mathbf{D} - \mathbf{A} = \begin{pmatrix} -1 \\ -4 \end{pmatrix} - \begin{pmatrix} -3 \\ 5 \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} 2 \\ -9 \end{pmatrix} \tag{1.1.5.15}$$

$$\mathbf{C} - \mathbf{A} = \begin{pmatrix} 0 \\ 3 \end{pmatrix} - \begin{pmatrix} -3 \\ 5 \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} 3 \\ -2 \end{pmatrix} \tag{1.1.5.16}$$

$$\mathbf{D} - \mathbf{B} = \begin{pmatrix} -1 \\ -4 \end{pmatrix} - \begin{pmatrix} 3 \\ 1 \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} -4 \\ -5 \end{pmatrix} \tag{1.1.5.17}$$

$$\mathbf{B} - \mathbf{A} \neq \mathbf{C} - \mathbf{D} \text{ and } \mathbf{C} - \mathbf{B} \neq \mathbf{D} - \mathbf{A},$$
 (1.1.5.18)

Hence, ABCD is not a parallelogram, it can be a irregular quadilateral.

i. Now to check if any three points are collinear, if rank of  $(\mathbf{B} - \mathbf{A} \quad \mathbf{C} - \mathbf{B}) = 1$  then points are collinear Forming the collinearity matrix

$$\begin{pmatrix} 6 & -3 \\ -4 & 2 \end{pmatrix} \stackrel{R_2 \to R_2 + \frac{2}{3}R_1}{\longleftrightarrow} = \begin{pmatrix} 6 & -3 \\ 0 & 0 \end{pmatrix}$$
 (1.1.5.19)

#### Hence, rank = 1

Since none of the opposite sides are parallel to each other and three points are collinear so these does not form a quadilateral.

As shown in Figure 1.1.5.2 we can see that ABCD does not form a quadilateral and three points are collinear hence, our theoritical result is verified.

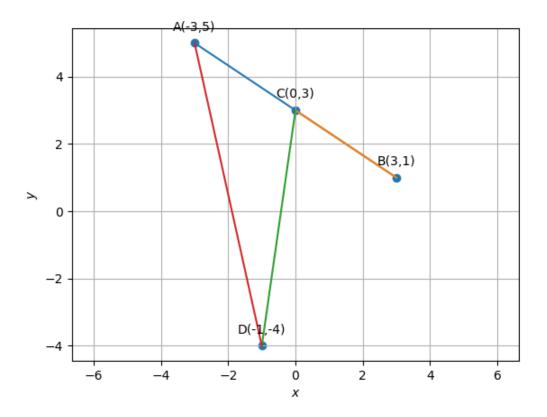


Figure 1.1.5.2:

(c) The coordinates are given as

$$\mathbf{A} = \begin{pmatrix} 4 \\ 5 \end{pmatrix}, \mathbf{B} = \begin{pmatrix} 7 \\ 6 \end{pmatrix}, \mathbf{C} = \begin{pmatrix} 4 \\ 3 \end{pmatrix} \text{ and } \mathbf{D} = \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 2 \end{pmatrix}$$
 (1.1.5.20)

$$\mathbf{B} - \mathbf{A} = \begin{pmatrix} 7 \\ 6 \end{pmatrix} - \begin{pmatrix} 4 \\ 5 \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} 3 \\ 1 \end{pmatrix} \tag{1.1.5.21}$$

$$\mathbf{C} - \mathbf{B} = \begin{pmatrix} 4 \\ 3 \end{pmatrix} - \begin{pmatrix} 7 \\ 6 \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} -3 \\ -3 \end{pmatrix} \tag{1.1.5.22}$$

$$\mathbf{C} - \mathbf{D} = \begin{pmatrix} 4 \\ 3 \end{pmatrix} - \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 2 \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} 3 \\ 1 \end{pmatrix} \tag{1.1.5.23}$$

$$\mathbf{D} - \mathbf{A} = \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 2 \end{pmatrix} - \begin{pmatrix} 4 \\ 5 \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} -3 \\ -3 \end{pmatrix} \tag{1.1.5.24}$$

$$\mathbf{C} - \mathbf{A} = \begin{pmatrix} 4 \\ 3 \end{pmatrix} - \begin{pmatrix} 4 \\ 5 \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} 0 \\ -2 \end{pmatrix} \tag{1.1.5.25}$$

$$\mathbf{D} - \mathbf{B} = \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 2 \end{pmatrix} - \begin{pmatrix} 7 \\ 6 \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} -6 \\ -4 \end{pmatrix} \tag{1.1.5.26}$$

$$\mathbf{B} - \mathbf{A} = \mathbf{C} - \mathbf{D} \text{ and } \mathbf{C} - \mathbf{B} = \mathbf{D} - \mathbf{A}, \tag{1.1.5.27}$$

Hence, ABCD is a parallelogram.

i. Now checking if the adjacent sides are orthogonal to each other

$$(\mathbf{B} - \mathbf{A})^{\top} (\mathbf{C} - \mathbf{B}) = \begin{pmatrix} 3 & 1 \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} -3 \\ -3 \end{pmatrix} = -9 - 3 = -12$$
 (1.1.5.28)

Since inner product is not zero so adjacent sides are not orthogonal.

Hence, we can say that ABCD is neither a rectangle nor a square.

ii. Now checking if the diagonals are orthogonal then it is a Rhombus.

$$(\mathbf{C} - \mathbf{A})^{\top} (\mathbf{D} - \mathbf{B}) = \begin{pmatrix} 0 & -2 \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} -6 \\ -4 \end{pmatrix} = 0 + 8 = 8$$
 (1.1.5.29)

Hence the diagonals are also not orthogonal so we conclude that ABCD is a parallelogram.

As shown in Figure 1.1.5.3 we can see that ABCD forms a parallelogram hence, our theoritical result is verified.

- 1.1.6 Find the point on the x-axis which is equidistant from (2, -5) and (-2, 9).
- 1.1.7 Find the values of y for which the distance between the points  $\mathbf{P}(2, -3)$  and  $\mathbf{Q}(10, y)$  is 10 units.
- 1.1.8 If  $\mathbf{Q}(0,1)$  is equidistant from  $\mathbf{P}(5,-3)$  and  $\mathbf{R}(x,6)$ , find the values of x. Also find the distances QR and PR.
- 1.1.9 Find a relation between x and y such that the point (x, y) is equidistant from the point (3, 6) and (-3, 4).

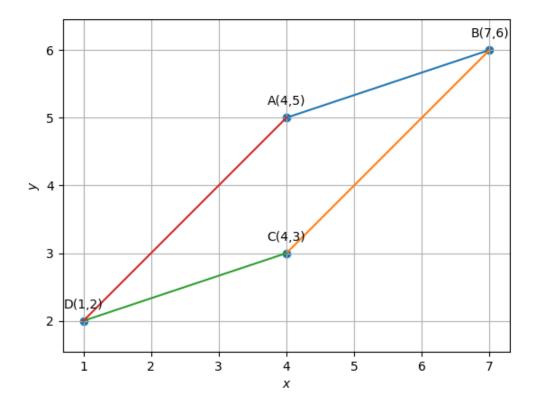


Figure 1.1.5.3:

## 1.2. Section Formula

- 1.2.1 Find the coordinates of the point which divides the join of (-1,7) and (4,-3) in the ratio 2:3.
- 1.2.2 Find the coordinates of the points of trisection of the line segment joining (4, -1) and (-2, 3).
- 1.2.3
- 1.2.4 Find the ratio in which the line segment joining the points (-3, 10) and (6, -8) is divided by (-1, 6).

- 1.2.5 Find the ratio in which the line segment joining A(1,-5) and B(-4,5) is divided by the x-axis Also find the coordinates of the point of division.
- 1.2.6 If (1,2),(4,y),(x,6),(3,5) are the vertices of a parallelogram taken in order, find x and y.
- 1.2.7 Find the coordinates of a point A, where AB is the diameter of a circle whose centre is (2, -3) and B is (1, 4).
- 1.2.8 If A and B are (-2, -2) and (2, -4), respectively, find the coordinates of P such that  $AP = \frac{3}{7}AB$  and P lies on the line segment AB.
- 1.2.9 Find the coordinates of the points which divide the line segment joining A(-2,2) and B(2,8) into four equal parts.
- 1.2.10 Find the area of a rhombus if its vertices are (3,0), (4,5), (-1,4) and (-2,-1) taken in order. [**Hint**: Area of rhombus  $=\frac{1}{2}$ (product of its diagonals)]

## 1.3. Properties

1.3.1 Compute the magnitude of the following vectors:

$$\mathbf{a} = \hat{i} + \hat{j} + k; \mathbf{b} = 2\hat{i} - 7\hat{j} - 3\hat{k}; \mathbf{c} = \frac{1}{\sqrt{3}}\hat{i} + \frac{1}{\sqrt{3}}\hat{j} - \frac{1}{3}\hat{k}$$

- 1.3.2 Write two different vectors having same magnitude.
- 1.3.3 Write two different vectors having same direction.
- 1.3.4 Find the values of x and y so that the vectors  $2\hat{i} + 3\hat{j}$  and  $x\hat{i} + y\hat{j}$  are equal.

- 1.3.5 Find the scalar and vector components of the vector with initial point (2, 1) and terminal point (-5, 7).
- 1.3.6 Find the sum of the vectors  $\mathbf{a} = \hat{i} 2\hat{j} + \hat{k}$ ,  $\mathbf{b} = -2\hat{i} + 4\hat{j} + 5\hat{k}$  and  $\mathbf{c} = \hat{i} 6\hat{j} 7\hat{k}$ .
- 1.3.7 Find the unit vector in the direction of the vector  $\mathbf{a} = \hat{i} + \hat{j} + 2\hat{k}$ .
- 1.3.8 Find the unit vector in the direction of vector  $\overrightarrow{PQ}$ , where **P** and **Q** are the points (1, 2, 3) and (4, 5, 6), respectively.
- 1.3.9 For given vectors,  $\mathbf{a} = 2\hat{i} \hat{j} + 2\hat{k}$  and  $\mathbf{b} = -\hat{i} + \hat{j} \hat{k}$ , find the unit vector in the direction of the vector  $\mathbf{a} + \mathbf{b}$ .
- 1.3.10 Find a vector in the direction of vector  $5\hat{i} \hat{j} + 2\hat{k}$  which has magnitude 8 units.
- 1.3.11 Show that the vectors  $2\hat{i} 3\hat{j} + 4\hat{k}$  and  $-4\hat{i} + 6\hat{j} 8\hat{k}$  are collinear.
- 1.3.12 Find the direction cosines of the vector  $\hat{i} + 2\hat{j} + 3\hat{k}$ .
- 1.3.13 Find the direction cosines of the vector joining the points **A** (1, 2, -3) and **B**(-1, -2, 1), directed from **A** to **B**.
- 1.3.14 Show that the vector  $\hat{i} + \hat{j} + \hat{k}$  is equally inclined to the axes OX, OY and OZ.
- 1.3.15 Find the position vector of a point R which divides the line joining two points **P** and **Q** whose position vectors are  $\hat{i} + 2\hat{j} \hat{k}$  and  $-\hat{i} + \hat{j} + \hat{k}$  respectively, in the ratio 2 : 1
  - (i) internally
  - (ii) externally
- 1.3.16 Find the position vector of the mid point of the vector joining the points  $\mathbf{P}(2, 3, 4)$  and  $\mathbf{Q}(4, 1, -2)$ .

- 1.3.17 Show that the points A, B and C with position vectors,  $\mathbf{a} = 3\hat{i} 4\hat{j} 4\hat{k}$ ,  $\mathbf{b} = 2\hat{i} \hat{j} + \hat{k}$  and  $\mathbf{c} = \hat{i} 3\hat{j} 5\hat{k}$ , respectively form the vertices of a right angled triangle.
- 1.3.18
- 1.3.19 If **a** and **b** are two collinear vectors, then which of the following are incorrect:
  - (a)  $\mathbf{b} = \lambda \mathbf{a}$ , for some scalar  $\lambda$
  - (b)  $\mathbf{a} = \pm \mathbf{b}$
  - (c) the respective components of **a** and **b** are not proportiona
  - (d) both the vectors **a** and **b** have same direction, but different magnitudes.

### 1.4. Scalar Product

- 1.4.1 Find the angle between two vectors  $\overrightarrow{a}$  and  $\overrightarrow{b}$  with magnitudes  $\sqrt{3}$  and 2 respectively having  $\overrightarrow{a} \cdot \overrightarrow{b} = \sqrt{6}$ .
- 1.4.2 Find the angle between the the vectors  $\hat{i} 2\hat{j} + 3\hat{k}$  and  $3\hat{i} 2\hat{j} + \hat{k}$ .
- 1.4.3 Find the projection of the vector  $\hat{i} \hat{j}$  on the vector  $\hat{i} + \hat{j}$ .

**Solution:** The given points are

$$\mathbf{A} = \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ -1 \end{pmatrix}, \mathbf{B} = \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 1 \end{pmatrix} \tag{1.4.3.1}$$

Since

$$\mathbf{A}^{\top}\mathbf{B} = \begin{pmatrix} 1 & -1 \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 1 \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} 1 \times 1 \end{pmatrix} + \begin{pmatrix} -1 \times 1 \end{pmatrix} = 0 \tag{1.4.3.2}$$

$$\|\mathbf{B}\|^2 = (\mathbf{B}^\top \mathbf{B}) = \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 1 \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 1 \end{pmatrix} = (1 \times 1) + (1 \times 1) = 2,$$
 (1.4.3.3)

and the project vector is given by

$$\mathbf{C} = \frac{\mathbf{A}^{\top} \mathbf{B}^{2}}{\|\mathbf{B}\|} \mathbf{B} \qquad = \frac{0}{2} \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 1 \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} 0 \\ 0 \end{pmatrix} \qquad (1.4.3.4)$$

This is verifed in Fig. 1.4.3.1.

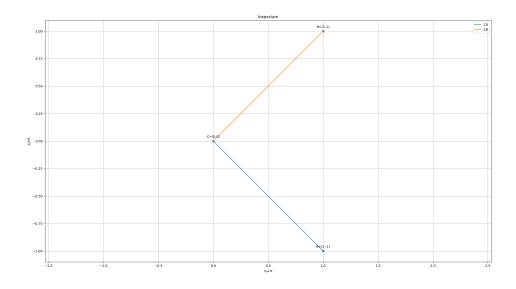


Figure 1.4.3.1:

1.4.4 Find the projection of the vector  $\hat{i} + 3\hat{j} + 7\hat{k}$  on the vector  $7\hat{i} - \hat{j} + 8\hat{k}$ .

1.4.5 Show that each of the given three vectors is a unit vector:

$$\frac{1}{7}(2\hat{i}+3\hat{j}+6\hat{k}), \frac{1}{7}(3\hat{i}-6\hat{j}+2\hat{k}), \frac{1}{7}(6\hat{i}+2\hat{j}-3\hat{k})$$

Also, show that they are mutually perpendicular to each other.

- $1.4.6 \ \text{Find} \ |\overrightarrow{a}| \ \text{and} \ \left|\overrightarrow{b}\right|, \text{if} \ (\overrightarrow{a}+\overrightarrow{b}).(\overrightarrow{a}-\overrightarrow{b}) = 8 \ \text{and} \ |\overrightarrow{a}| = 8 \left|\overrightarrow{b}\right|.$
- 1.4.7 Evaluate the product  $(3\overrightarrow{a} 5\overrightarrow{b}).(2\overrightarrow{a} + 7\overrightarrow{b}).$
- 1.4.8 Find the magnitude of two vectors  $\overrightarrow{d}$  and  $\overrightarrow{b}$ , having the same magnitude and such that the angle between them is  $60^{\circ}$  and their scalar product is  $\frac{1}{2}$
- 1.4.9 Find  $|\overrightarrow{x}|$ , if for a unit vector  $\overrightarrow{a}$ ,  $(\overrightarrow{x} \overrightarrow{a}) \cdot (\overrightarrow{x} + \overrightarrow{a}) = 12$ .

**Solution:** From the given information,

$$(\mathbf{x} - \mathbf{a})^{\top} (\mathbf{x} + \mathbf{a}) = 12 \tag{1.4.9.1}$$

$$\implies \mathbf{x}^{\top}\mathbf{x} - \mathbf{a}^{\top}\mathbf{x} + \mathbf{x}^{\top}\mathbf{a} - \mathbf{a}^{\top}\mathbf{a} = 12 \tag{1.4.9.2}$$

$$\implies \|\mathbf{x}\|^2 - \|\mathbf{a}\|^2 = 12 \tag{1.4.9.3}$$

$$\implies \|\mathbf{x}\|^2 - 1 = 12 \tag{1.4.9.4}$$

or, 
$$\|\mathbf{x}\| = \sqrt{13}$$
 (1.4.9.5)

1.4.10 If  $\overrightarrow{a} = 2\hat{i} + 2\hat{j}3\hat{k}$ ,  $\overrightarrow{b} = -\hat{i} + 2\hat{j} + \hat{k}$  and  $\overrightarrow{c} = 3\hat{i} + \hat{j}$  are such that  $\overrightarrow{a} + \lambda \overrightarrow{b}$  is perpendicular to  $\overrightarrow{c}$ , then find the value of  $\lambda$ .

Solution: Given that

$$(\mathbf{a} + \lambda \mathbf{b})^{\mathsf{T}} \mathbf{c} = 0 \tag{1.4.10.1}$$

$$\implies \mathbf{a}^{\top} \mathbf{c} + \lambda \mathbf{b}^{\top} \mathbf{c} = 0 \tag{1.4.10.2}$$

$$\implies \lambda \mathbf{b}^{\mathsf{T}} \mathbf{c} = -\mathbf{a}^{\mathsf{T}} \mathbf{c} \tag{1.4.10.3}$$

$$\implies \lambda(\mathbf{b}^{\mathsf{T}}\mathbf{c})(\mathbf{b}^{\mathsf{T}}\mathbf{c})^{-1} = -(\mathbf{a}^{\mathsf{T}}\mathbf{c})(\mathbf{b}^{\mathsf{T}}\mathbf{c})^{-1} \tag{1.4.10.4}$$

$$\implies \lambda = -(\mathbf{a}^{\mathsf{T}}\mathbf{c})(\mathbf{b}^{\mathsf{T}}\mathbf{c})^{-1} \tag{1.4.10.5}$$

Now substituting the values

$$\mathbf{a}^{\top} \mathbf{c} = \begin{pmatrix} 2 & 2 & 3 \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} 3 \\ 1 \\ 0 \end{pmatrix} = 8$$

$$\mathbf{b}^{\top} \mathbf{c} = \begin{pmatrix} -1 & 2 & 1 \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} 3 \\ 1 \\ 0 \end{pmatrix} = -1,$$

$$(1.4.10.6)$$

$$\mathbf{b}^{\top}\mathbf{c} = \begin{pmatrix} -1 & 2 & 1 \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} 3 \\ 1 \\ 0 \end{pmatrix} = -1, \tag{1.4.10.7}$$

$$\lambda = -(\mathbf{a}^{\top} \mathbf{c})(\mathbf{b}^{\top} \mathbf{c})^{-1} \tag{1.4.10.8}$$

$$= -(8)(-1)^{-1} (1.4.10.9)$$

$$= 8 ag{1.4.10.10}$$

- 1.4.11 Show that  $|\overrightarrow{a}|\overrightarrow{b} + |\overrightarrow{b}|\overrightarrow{a}$  is perpendicular to  $|\overrightarrow{a}|\overrightarrow{b} |\overrightarrow{b}|\overrightarrow{a}$ , for any two nonzero vectors  $\overrightarrow{a}$  and  $\overrightarrow{b}$ .
- 1.4.12 If  $\overrightarrow{a}$ .  $\overrightarrow{a} = 0$  and  $\overrightarrow{a}$ .  $\overrightarrow{b} = 0$ , then what can be conculded about the vector  $\overrightarrow{b}$ ?

- 1.4.13 If  $\overrightarrow{a}$ ,  $\overrightarrow{b}$ ,  $\overrightarrow{c}$  are unit vectors such that  $\overrightarrow{a} + \overrightarrow{b} + \overrightarrow{c} = \overrightarrow{0}$ , find the value of  $\overrightarrow{a} \cdot \overrightarrow{b} + \overrightarrow{b} \cdot \overrightarrow{c} + \overrightarrow{c} \cdot \overrightarrow{a}$ .
- 1.4.14 If either vector  $\overrightarrow{a} = 0$  or  $\overrightarrow{b} = 0$ , then  $\overrightarrow{a} \cdot \overrightarrow{b} = 0$ . But the converse need not be true . Justify your answer with an example.
- 1.4.15 If the vertices A,B,C of a triangle ABC are (1,2,3),(-1,0,0)(0,1,2), respectively, then find  $\angle ABC$ .  $[\angle ABC$  is the angle between the vectors  $\overrightarrow{BA}$  and  $\overrightarrow{BC}$ .
- 1.4.16 show that the points A(1,2,7), B(2,6,3) and C(3,10,-1) are collinear.
- 1.4.17 show that the vectors  $2\hat{i} \hat{j} + \hat{k}$ ,  $\hat{i} 3\hat{j} 5\hat{k}$  and  $3\hat{i} 4\hat{j} 4\hat{k}$  from the vertices of a right angled triangle.
- 1.4.18 If  $\overrightarrow{a}$  is a nonzero vector of magnitude 'a' and  $\lambda$  a nonzero scalar , then  $\lambda \overrightarrow{a}$  is unit vector if
  - (a)  $\lambda = 1$
  - (b)  $\lambda = -1$
  - (c)  $a = |\lambda|$
  - (d)  $a = 1/|\lambda|$

## 1.5. Area of a Triangle

- 1.5.1 Find the area of the triangle whose vertices are
  - (a) (2,3), (-1,0), (2,-4)
  - (b) (-5,-1), (3,-5), (5,2)

#### Solution:

(a) In this case, the area is given by

$$\frac{1}{2} \| (\mathbf{A} - \mathbf{B}) \times (\mathbf{A} - \mathbf{C}) \| \tag{1.5.1.1}$$

(1.5.1.2)

Since

$$\mathbf{A} - \mathbf{B} = \begin{pmatrix} 2 \\ 3 \end{pmatrix} - \begin{pmatrix} -1 \\ 0 \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} 3 \\ 3 \end{pmatrix} \tag{1.5.1.3}$$

$$\mathbf{A} - \mathbf{C} = \begin{pmatrix} 2 \\ 3 \end{pmatrix} - \begin{pmatrix} 2 \\ -4 \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} 0 \\ 7 \end{pmatrix} \tag{1.5.1.4}$$

the desired area is given by

$$\frac{1}{2} \begin{vmatrix} 3 & 0 \\ 3 & 7 \end{vmatrix} = \frac{21}{2} \tag{1.5.1.5}$$

(b) In this case,

$$\mathbf{A} - \mathbf{B} = \begin{pmatrix} -5 \\ -1 \end{pmatrix} - \begin{pmatrix} 3 \\ -5 \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} -8 \\ 4 \end{pmatrix} \tag{1.5.1.6}$$

$$\mathbf{A} - \mathbf{C} = \begin{pmatrix} -5 \\ -1 \end{pmatrix} - \begin{pmatrix} 5 \\ 2 \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} -10 \\ -3 \end{pmatrix} \tag{1.5.1.7}$$

$$\implies \text{Area} = \frac{1}{2} \begin{vmatrix} -8 & -10 \\ 4 & -3 \end{vmatrix} = 32 \tag{1.5.1.8}$$

- 1.5.2 In each of the following, find the value of 'k', for which the points are collinear.
  - (a) (7,-2), (5,1), (3,k)
  - (b) (8,1), (k,-4), (2,-5)
- 1.5.3 Find the area of the triangle formed by joining the mid-points of the sides of the triangle whose vertices are (0,-1), (2,1) and (0,3). Find the ratio of this area to the area of the given triangle.
- 1.5.4 Find the area of the quadrilateral whose vertices, taken in order, are (-4, -2), (-3, -5), (3, -2) and (2, 3).
- 1.5.5 Verify that a median of a triangle divides it into two triangles of equal areas for  $\triangle ABC$  whose vertices are  $\mathbf{A}(4,-6), \mathbf{B}(3,2)$ , and  $\mathbf{C}(5,2)$ .
- 1.5.6 Find the area of region bounded by the triangle whose vertices are (1,0),(2,2) and (3,1).
- 1.5.7 Find the area of region bounded by the triangle whose vertices are (-1,0), (1,3) and (3,2).
- 1.5.8 Find the area of the  $\triangle ABC$ , coordinates of whose vertices are  $\mathbf{A}(2,0), \mathbf{B}(4,5)$ , and  $\mathbf{C}(6,3)$ .

### 1.6. Vector Product

- 1.6.1 Find  $\left| \overrightarrow{d} \times \overrightarrow{b} \right|$ , if  $\overrightarrow{a} = \hat{i} 7\hat{j} + 7\hat{k}$  and  $\overrightarrow{b} = 3\hat{i} 2\hat{j} + 2\hat{k}$ .
- 1.6.2 Find a unit vector perpendicular to each of the vector  $\overrightarrow{a} + \overrightarrow{b}$  and  $\overrightarrow{a} \overrightarrow{b}$ , where  $\overrightarrow{a} = 3\hat{i} + 2\hat{j} + 2\hat{k}$  and  $\overrightarrow{b} = \hat{i} + 2\hat{j} 2\hat{k}$ .
- 1.6.3 If a unit vector  $\overrightarrow{a}$  makes angles  $\frac{\pi}{3}$  with  $\hat{i}$ ,  $\frac{\pi}{4}$  with  $\hat{j}$  and an acute angle  $\theta$  with  $\hat{k}$ , then find  $\theta$  and hence, the components of  $\overrightarrow{a}$ .

1.6.4 Show that

$$(\overrightarrow{a} - \overrightarrow{b}) \times (\overrightarrow{a} + \overrightarrow{b}) = 2(\overrightarrow{a} \times \overrightarrow{b})$$

- 1.6.5 Find  $\lambda$  and  $\mu$  if  $(2\hat{i} + 6\hat{j} + 27\hat{k}) \times (\hat{i} + \lambda\hat{j} + \mu\hat{k}) = \overrightarrow{0}$ .
- 1.6.6 Given that  $\overrightarrow{a} \cdot \overrightarrow{b} = 0$  and  $\overrightarrow{a} \times \overrightarrow{b} = \overrightarrow{0}$ . What can you conclude about the vectors  $\overrightarrow{a}$  and  $\overrightarrow{b}$ ?
- 1.6.7 Let the vectors be given as  $\overrightarrow{a}$ ,  $\overrightarrow{b}$ ,  $\overrightarrow{c}$  be given as  $a_1\hat{i} + a_2\hat{j} + a_3\hat{k}$ ,  $b_1\hat{i} + b_2\hat{j} + b_3\hat{k}$ ,  $c_1\hat{i} + c_2\hat{j} + c_3\hat{k}$ . Then show that  $\overrightarrow{a} \times (\overrightarrow{b} + \overrightarrow{c}) = \overrightarrow{a} \times \overrightarrow{b} + \overrightarrow{a} \times \overrightarrow{c}$ .
- 1.6.8 If either  $\overrightarrow{a} = \overrightarrow{0}$  or  $\overrightarrow{b} = \overrightarrow{0}$ , then  $\overrightarrow{a} \times \overrightarrow{b} = \overrightarrow{0}$ . Is the converse true? Justify your answer with an example.
- 1.6.9 Find the area of the triangle with vertices A(1,1,2), B(2,3,5), and C(1,5,5)
- 1.6.10 Find the area of the parallelogram whose adjacent sides are determined by the vectors  $\overrightarrow{a} = \hat{i} \hat{j} + 3\hat{k}$  and  $\overrightarrow{b} = 2\hat{i} 7\hat{j} + \hat{k}$ .
- 1.6.11 Let the vectors  $\overrightarrow{a}$  and  $\overrightarrow{b}$  be such that  $|\overrightarrow{a}| = 3$  and  $|\overrightarrow{b}| = \frac{\sqrt{2}}{3}$ , then  $\overrightarrow{a} \times \overrightarrow{b}$  is a unit vector, if the angle between  $\overrightarrow{a}$  and  $\overrightarrow{b}$  is
  - (a)  $\frac{\pi}{6}$
  - (b)  $\frac{\pi}{4}$
  - (c)  $\frac{\pi}{3}$
  - (d)  $\frac{\pi}{2}$
- 1.6.12 Area of a rectangle having vertices A, B, C and D with position vectors  $-\hat{i} + \frac{1}{2}\hat{j} + 4\hat{k}$ ,  $\hat{i} + \frac{1}{2}\hat{j} + 4\hat{k}$ ,  $\hat{i} \frac{1}{2}\hat{j} + 4\hat{k}$  and  $-\hat{i} \frac{1}{2}\hat{j} + 4\hat{k}$ , respectively is
  - (a)  $\frac{1}{2}$

- (b) 1
- (c) 2
- (d) 4

### 1.7. Miscellaneous Exercises

- 1.7.1 Determine the ratio in which the line 2x + y 4 = 0 divides the line segment joining the points  $\mathbf{A}(2, -2)$  and  $\mathbf{B}(3, 7)$ .
- 1.7.2 Find a relation between x and y if the points (x, y), (1, 2) and (7, 0) are collinear.
- 1.7.3 Find the centre of a circle passing through the points (6,-6), (3,-7) and (3,3).
- 1.7.4 The two opposite vertices of a square are (-1,2) and (3,2). Find the coordinates of the other two vertices.

Solution: Let

$$\mathbf{A} = \begin{pmatrix} -1\\2 \end{pmatrix}, \mathbf{C} = \begin{pmatrix} 3\\2 \end{pmatrix} \tag{1.7.4.1}$$

Shifting **A** to origin with reference to Fig. 1.7.4.2,

$$\mathbf{A}' = \begin{pmatrix} 0 \\ 0 \end{pmatrix}, \mathbf{C}' = \mathbf{C} - \mathbf{A} = \begin{pmatrix} 4 \\ 0 \end{pmatrix}$$
 (1.7.4.2)

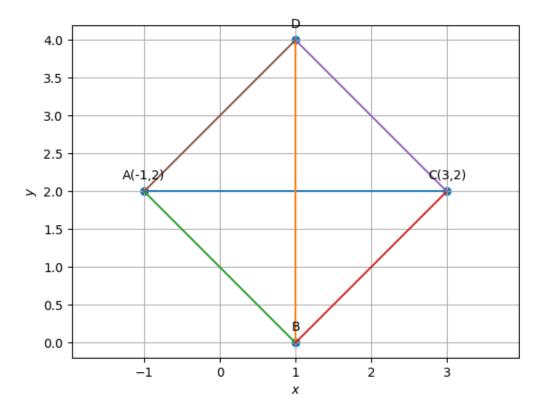


Figure 1.7.4.1:

Since

$$\mathbf{C} - \mathbf{A} = \begin{pmatrix} 4 \\ 0 \end{pmatrix} \equiv \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 0 \end{pmatrix}, \tan \theta = \frac{0}{4} \implies \theta = 0^{\circ}$$
 (1.7.4.3)

where  $\theta$  is the angle made by AC with the x-axis. Considering the rotation matrix

$$\mathbf{P} = \begin{pmatrix} \cos\left(\frac{\pi}{4} - \theta\right) & -\sin\left(\frac{\pi}{4} - \theta\right) \\ \sin\left(\frac{\pi}{4} - \theta\right) & \cos\left(\frac{\pi}{4} - \theta\right) \end{pmatrix}$$
(1.7.4.4)

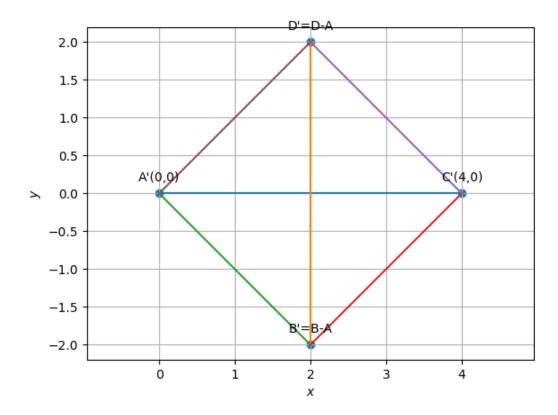


Figure 1.7.4.2:

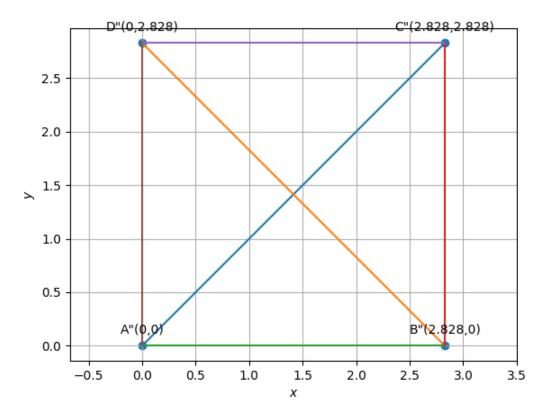


Figure 1.7.4.3:

from Figure 1.7.4.3,

$$\mathbf{C}'' = \mathbf{P}(\mathbf{C} - \mathbf{A}) \tag{1.7.4.5}$$

$$\mathbf{B}'' = \begin{pmatrix} \mathbf{e}_1 & \mathbf{0} \end{pmatrix} \mathbf{C}'' \tag{1.7.4.6}$$

$$\mathbf{C}'' = \mathbf{P}(\mathbf{C} - \mathbf{A}) \tag{1.7.4.5}$$

$$\mathbf{B}'' = \begin{pmatrix} \mathbf{e}_1 & \mathbf{0} \end{pmatrix} \mathbf{C}'' \tag{1.7.4.6}$$

$$\mathbf{D}'' = \begin{pmatrix} \mathbf{0} & \mathbf{e}_2 \end{pmatrix} \mathbf{C}'' \tag{1.7.4.7}$$

Now,

$$\mathbf{B} = \mathbf{P}^{\top} \mathbf{B}'' + \mathbf{A} \tag{1.7.4.8}$$

$$\mathbf{D} = \mathbf{P}^{\top} \mathbf{D}'' + \mathbf{A} \tag{1.7.4.9}$$

by reversing the process of translation and rotation. Thus, from (1.7.4.8) (1.7.4.6), (1.7.4.9) and (1.7.4.7)

$$\mathbf{B} = \mathbf{P}^{\top} \begin{pmatrix} \mathbf{e}_1 & \mathbf{0} \end{pmatrix} \mathbf{P} (\mathbf{C} - \mathbf{A}) + \mathbf{A}$$
 (1.7.4.10)

$$\mathbf{D} = \mathbf{P}^{\top} \begin{pmatrix} \mathbf{0} & \mathbf{e}_2 \end{pmatrix} \mathbf{P} (\mathbf{C} - \mathbf{A}) + \mathbf{A}$$
 (1.7.4.11)

yielding

$$\mathbf{B} = \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 0 \end{pmatrix}, \mathbf{D} \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 4 \end{pmatrix}. \tag{1.7.4.12}$$

- 1.7.5 The vertices of a  $\triangle ABC$  are  $\mathbf{A}(4,6)$ ,  $\mathbf{B}(1,5)$  and  $\mathbf{C}(7,2)$ . A line is drawn to intersect sides AB and AC at  $\mathbf{D}$  and  $\mathbf{E}$  respectively, such that  $\frac{AD}{AB} = \frac{AE}{AC} = \frac{1}{4}$ . Calculate the area of  $\triangle ADE$  and compare it with the area of the  $\triangle ABC$ .
- 1.7.6 Let  $\mathbf{A}(4,2), \mathbf{B}(6,5)$  and  $\mathbf{C}(1,4)$  be the vertices of  $\triangle ABC$ .
  - (a) The median from  $\mathbf{A}$  meets BC at  $\mathbf{D}$ . Find the coordinates of the point  $\mathbf{D}$ .
  - (b) Find the coordinates of the point **P** on AD such that AP:PD=2:1.
  - (c) Find the coordinates of points  $\mathbf{Q}$  and  $\mathbf{R}$  on medians BE and CF respectively such that BQ: QE = 2:1 and CR: RF = 2:1.
  - (d) What do you observe?

(e) If  $\mathbf{A}, \mathbf{B}$  and  $\mathbf{C}$  are the vertices of  $\triangle ABC$ , find the coordinates of the centroid of the triangle.

1.7.7 ABCD is a rectangle formed by the points  $\mathbf{A}(-1,-1)$ ,  $\mathbf{B}(-1,4)$ ,  $\mathbf{C}(5,4)$  and  $\mathbf{D}(5,-1)$ .

 $\mathbf{P}, \mathbf{Q}, \mathbf{R}$  and  $\mathbf{S}$  are the mid-points of AB, BC, CD and DA respectively. Is the quadrilateral PQRS a square? a rectangle? or a rhombus? Justify your answer.

Solution: See Fig. 1.7.7.1.

$$\mathbf{P} = \frac{1}{2} \left( \mathbf{A} + \mathbf{B} \right) = \frac{1}{2} \left( \begin{pmatrix} -1 \\ -1 \end{pmatrix} + \begin{pmatrix} -1 \\ 4 \end{pmatrix} \right) = \begin{pmatrix} -1 \\ \frac{3}{2} \end{pmatrix}$$
 (1.7.7.1)

$$\mathbf{Q} = \frac{1}{2} \left( \mathbf{B} + \mathbf{C} \right) = \frac{1}{2} \left( \begin{pmatrix} -1 \\ 4 \end{pmatrix} + \begin{pmatrix} 5 \\ 4 \end{pmatrix} \right) = \begin{pmatrix} 2 \\ 4 \end{pmatrix}$$
 (1.7.7.2)

$$\mathbf{R} = \frac{1}{2} \left( \mathbf{C} + \mathbf{D} \right) = \frac{1}{2} \left( \begin{pmatrix} 5 \\ 4 \end{pmatrix} + \begin{pmatrix} 5 \\ -1 \end{pmatrix} \right) = \begin{pmatrix} 5 \\ \frac{3}{2} \end{pmatrix}$$
 (1.7.7.3)

$$\mathbf{S} = \frac{1}{2} \left( \mathbf{D} + \mathbf{A} \right) = \frac{1}{2} \left( \begin{pmatrix} 5 \\ -1 \end{pmatrix} + \begin{pmatrix} -1 \\ -1 \end{pmatrix} \right) = \begin{pmatrix} 2 \\ -1 \end{pmatrix}$$
 (1.7.7.4)

We know that PQRS is a parallelogram. To know, if it is a rectangle, we need to ascertain whether any of the two adjacent sides are perpendicular. That means

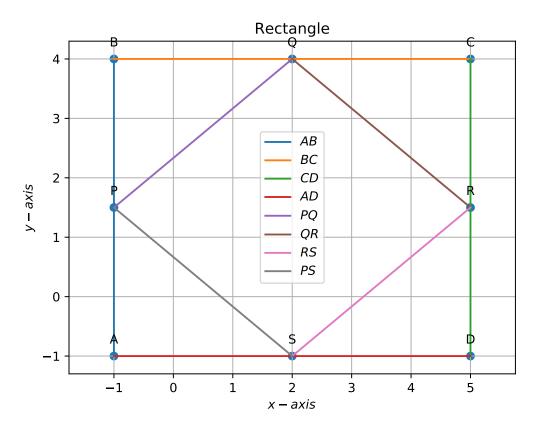


Figure 1.7.7.1:

 $\left(\mathbf{Q}-\mathbf{P}\right)^{\top}\left(\mathbf{R}-\mathbf{Q}\right)$  should be equal to zero.

$$\mathbf{Q} - \mathbf{P} = \begin{pmatrix} 2 \\ 4 \end{pmatrix} - \begin{pmatrix} -1 \\ \frac{3}{2} \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} 3 \\ \frac{5}{2} \end{pmatrix} \tag{1.7.7.5}$$

$$\mathbf{Q} - \mathbf{P} = \begin{pmatrix} 2 \\ 4 \end{pmatrix} - \begin{pmatrix} -1 \\ \frac{3}{2} \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} 3 \\ \frac{5}{2} \end{pmatrix}$$

$$\mathbf{R} - \mathbf{Q} = \begin{pmatrix} 5 \\ \frac{3}{2} \end{pmatrix} - \begin{pmatrix} 2 \\ 4 \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} 3 \\ -\frac{5}{2} \end{pmatrix}$$

$$(1.7.7.6)$$

$$(\mathbf{Q} - \mathbf{P})^{\top} (\mathbf{R} - \mathbf{Q}) = \begin{pmatrix} 3 & \frac{5}{2} \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} 3 \\ -\frac{5}{2} \end{pmatrix} \neq 0$$
 (1.7.7.7)

Therefore PQRS is not a rectangle. Let us check if it is a rhombus. For a rhombus, the diagonals bisect perpendicularly. That means  $(\mathbf{R} - \mathbf{P})^{\top} (\mathbf{S} - \mathbf{Q})$  should be equal to zero.

$$\mathbf{R} - \mathbf{P} = \begin{pmatrix} 5 \\ \frac{3}{2} \end{pmatrix} - \begin{pmatrix} -1 \\ \frac{3}{2} \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} 6 \\ 0 \end{pmatrix}$$
 (1.7.7.8)

$$\mathbf{S} - \mathbf{Q} = \begin{pmatrix} 2 \\ -1 \end{pmatrix} - \begin{pmatrix} 2 \\ 4 \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} 0 \\ -5 \end{pmatrix} \tag{1.7.7.9}$$

$$(\mathbf{R} - \mathbf{P})^{\top} (\mathbf{S} - \mathbf{Q}) = \begin{pmatrix} 6 & 0 \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} 0 \\ -5 \end{pmatrix} = 0$$
 (1.7.7.10)

Therefore PQRS is a rhombus.

#### 1.8. Line Preliminaries

1.8.1 Draw a quadrilateral in the Cartesian plane, whose vertices are (-4,5), (0,7), (5,-5), (-4,-2). Also, find its area.

Solution: See Fig. 1.8.1.1.

$$ar(\triangle ABC) = \frac{1}{2} \| (\mathbf{B} - \mathbf{A}) \times (\mathbf{B} - \mathbf{C}) \|$$
 (1.8.1.1)

$$= \frac{1}{2} \begin{vmatrix} 4 & 2 \\ -5 & 12 \end{vmatrix} = 29 \tag{1.8.1.2}$$

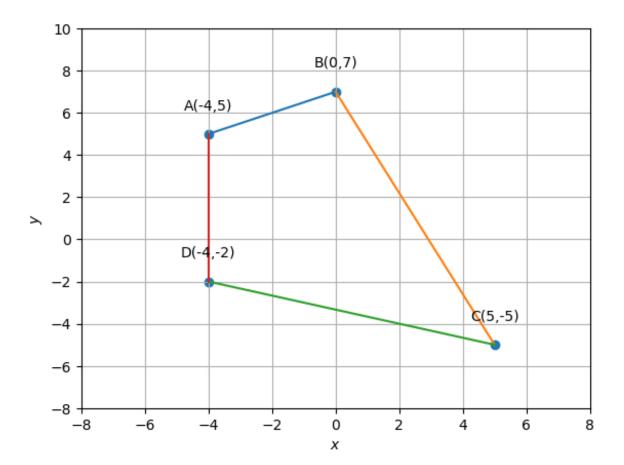


Figure 1.8.1.1:

Similarly,

$$ar(\triangle ADC) = \frac{1}{2} \| (\mathbf{D} - \mathbf{A}) \times (\mathbf{D} - \mathbf{C}) \|$$
 (1.8.1.3)

$$= \frac{1}{2} \begin{vmatrix} 0 & -7 \\ -9 & 3 \end{vmatrix} = 31.5 \tag{1.8.1.4}$$

Thus,

$$ar(ABCD) = ar(\triangle ABC) + ar(\triangle ADC) = 60.5$$
 (1.8.1.5)

1.8.2 The base of an equilateral triangle with side 2a lies along the y-axis such that the mid-point of the base is at the origin. Find vertices of the triangle.

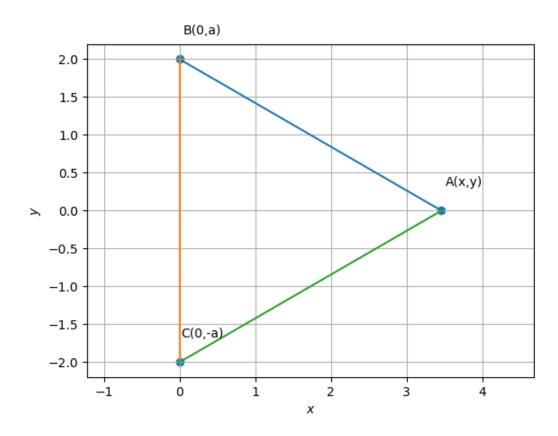


Figure 1.8.2.1:

**Solution:** Let the base be BC. From the given information,

$$\mathbf{B} = a\mathbf{e}_2, \mathbf{C} = -a\mathbf{e}_2 \tag{1.8.2.1}$$

Since **A** lies on the x-axis,

$$\mathbf{A} = k\mathbf{e}_1 \tag{1.8.2.2}$$

and

$$\|\mathbf{A} - \mathbf{C}\|^2 = (2a)^2 \tag{1.8.2.3}$$

$$\implies \|\mathbf{A}\|^2 + \|\mathbf{C}\|^2 - 2\mathbf{A}^\top \mathbf{C} = 4a^2 \tag{1.8.2.4}$$

$$\implies k^2 + a^2 = 4a^2 \tag{1.8.2.5}$$

or, 
$$k = \pm a\sqrt{3}$$
 (1.8.2.6)

Thus,

$$\mathbf{A} = \pm \sqrt{3}a\mathbf{e}_1 \tag{1.8.2.7}$$

Fig. 1.8.2.1 is plotted for a = 2.

1.8.3 Find a point on the x-axis, which is equidistant from the points  $\begin{pmatrix} 7 \\ 6 \end{pmatrix}$  and  $\begin{pmatrix} 3 \\ 4 \end{pmatrix}$ .

**Solution:** From the given information

$$\|\mathbf{x} - \mathbf{A}\|^2 = \|\mathbf{x} - \mathbf{B}\|^2 \tag{1.8.3.1}$$

$$\implies (\mathbf{x} - \mathbf{A})^{\top} (\mathbf{x} - \mathbf{A}) = (\mathbf{x} - \mathbf{B})^{\top} (\mathbf{x} - \mathbf{B})$$
 (1.8.3.2)

$$\implies \|\mathbf{x}\|^2 - 2\mathbf{A}^{\top}\mathbf{x} + \|\mathbf{A}\|^2 = \|\mathbf{x}\|^2 - 2\mathbf{B}^{\top}\mathbf{x} + \|\mathbf{B}\|^2$$
 (1.8.3.3)

or, 
$$(\mathbf{A} - \mathbf{B})^{\top} \mathbf{x} = \frac{\|\mathbf{A}\|^2 - \|\mathbf{B}\|^2}{2}$$
 (1.8.3.4)

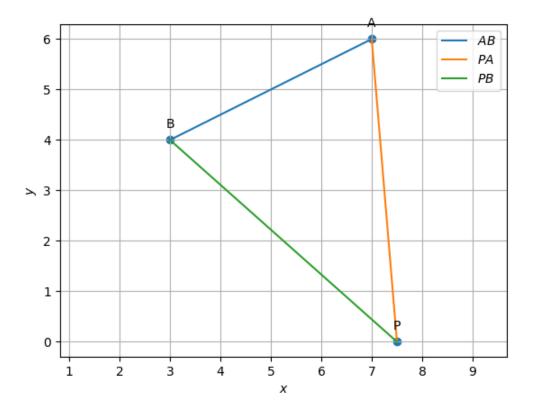


Figure 1.8.3.1:

Since  $\mathbf{x}$  lies on the x-axis,

$$\mathbf{x} = k\mathbf{e}_1 \tag{1.8.3.5}$$

which, upon substituting in (1.8.3.4) yields

$$k = \frac{15}{2} \tag{1.8.3.6}$$

1.8.4

1.8.5 Find the slope of a line, which passes through the origin and the mid point of the line segment joining the points  $\mathbf{P}(0,-4)$  and  $\mathbf{B}(8,0)$ .

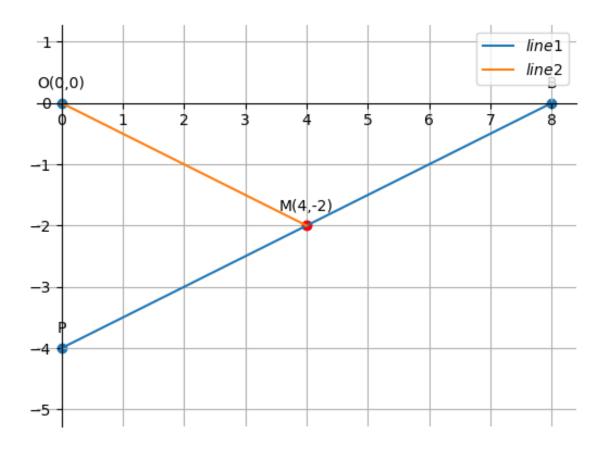


Figure 1.8.5.1:

**Solution:** The mid point of PB is

$$\mathbf{M} = \frac{1}{2}(\mathbf{P} + \mathbf{B}) = \begin{pmatrix} 4\\ -2 \end{pmatrix} \tag{1.8.5.1}$$

The direction vector of line joining  $\mathbf{O}, \mathbf{M}$  is

$$\mathbf{m} = \mathbf{O} - \mathbf{M} = -\mathbf{M} \tag{1.8.5.2}$$

which can be expressed as

$$\begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ -\frac{1}{2} \end{pmatrix} \tag{1.8.5.3}$$

Thus the slope is

$$m = -\frac{1}{2} \tag{1.8.5.4}$$

are the vertices of a right angled triangle.

$$\mathbf{C} - \mathbf{A} = \begin{pmatrix} -5 \\ -5 \end{pmatrix}, \qquad (1.8.6.1)$$

$$\mathbf{A} - \mathbf{B} = \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ -1 \end{pmatrix} \qquad (1.8.6.2)$$

$$\mathbf{A} - \mathbf{B} = \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ -1 \end{pmatrix} \tag{1.8.6.2}$$

$$\implies (\mathbf{C} - \mathbf{A})^{\top} (\mathbf{A} - \mathbf{B}) = 0 \tag{1.8.6.3}$$

Thus,  $AB \perp AC$ .

1.8.7 If three points (x, -1), (2, 1) and (4, 5) are collinear, find the value of x.

Solution: Let

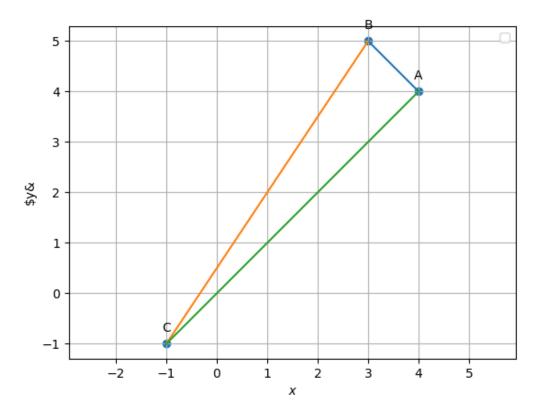


Figure 1.8.6.1:

$$\mathbf{A} = \begin{pmatrix} x \\ -1 \end{pmatrix}, \mathbf{B} = \begin{pmatrix} 2 \\ 1 \end{pmatrix}, \mathbf{C} = \begin{pmatrix} 4 \\ 5 \end{pmatrix}. \tag{1.8.7.1}$$

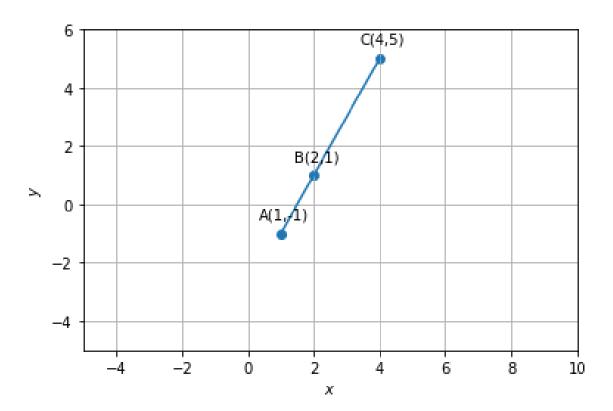


Figure 1.8.7.1:

Then

$$\mathbf{A} - \mathbf{B} = \begin{pmatrix} x - 2 \\ -2 \end{pmatrix}$$

$$\mathbf{A} - \mathbf{C} = \begin{pmatrix} 4 - x \\ 6 \end{pmatrix}$$
(1.8.7.2)

$$\mathbf{A} - \mathbf{C} = \begin{pmatrix} 4 - x \\ 6 \end{pmatrix} \tag{1.8.7.3}$$

Forming the collinearity matrix using (C.1.4.1),

$$\begin{pmatrix} x-2 & -2 \\ 4-x & 6 \end{pmatrix} \stackrel{R_1=3R_1+R-2}{\longleftrightarrow} = \begin{pmatrix} 2x-2 & 0 \\ 4-x & 6 \end{pmatrix}$$
 (1.8.7.4)

If the rank of the matrix is 1, any one of the rows must be zero. So, making the first element in the above matrix 0,

$$x = 1 (1.8.7.5)$$

1.8.8 Without using distance formula, show that points (-2, -1), (4, 0), (3, 3) and (-3, 2) are the vertices of a parallelogram.

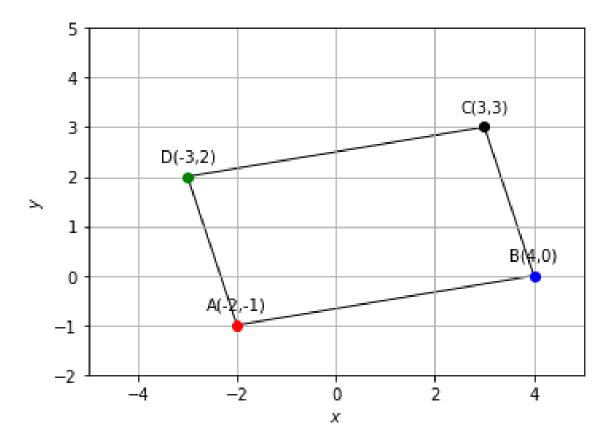


Figure 1.8.8.1:

Solution: See Fig. 1.8.8.1.

$$\mathbf{A} = \begin{pmatrix} -2 \\ -1 \end{pmatrix}, \mathbf{B} = \begin{pmatrix} 4 \\ 0 \end{pmatrix}, \mathbf{C} = \begin{pmatrix} 3 \\ 3 \end{pmatrix}, \mathbf{D} = \begin{pmatrix} -3 \\ 2 \end{pmatrix}$$
 (1.8.8.1)

and

$$\mathbf{P} = \mathbf{B} - \mathbf{A} = \begin{pmatrix} 6 \\ 1 \end{pmatrix} \tag{1.8.8.2}$$

$$\mathbf{Q} = \mathbf{C} - \mathbf{D} = \begin{pmatrix} 6\\1 \end{pmatrix} \tag{1.8.8.3}$$

$$\mathbf{R} = \mathbf{A} - \mathbf{C} = \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ -3 \end{pmatrix} \tag{1.8.8.4}$$

$$\mathbf{S} = \mathbf{A} - \mathbf{D} = \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ -3 \end{pmatrix} \tag{1.8.8.5}$$

Since P = Q and R = S, from (A.1.24.1), ABCD is a parallelogram

1.8.9 Find the angle between x-axis and the line joining points (3,-1) and (4,-2)

**Solution:** See Fig. 1.8.9.1.

Let

$$\mathbf{P} = \begin{pmatrix} 3 \\ -1 \end{pmatrix}, \mathbf{Q} = \begin{pmatrix} 4 \\ -2 \end{pmatrix} \tag{1.8.9.1}$$

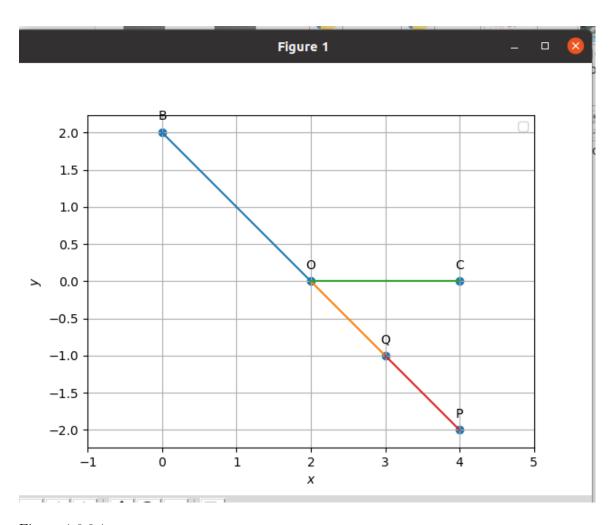


Figure 1.8.9.1:

Then

$$\mathbf{C} = \mathbf{P} - \mathbf{Q} = \begin{pmatrix} -1\\1 \end{pmatrix} \tag{1.8.9.2}$$

The desired angle is given by

$$\cos \theta = \frac{\mathbf{C}^T \mathbf{e}_1}{\|\mathbf{C}\| \|\mathbf{e}_1\|}$$

$$= -\frac{1}{\sqrt{2}}$$
(1.8.9.3)
$$(1.8.9.4)$$

$$= -\frac{1}{\sqrt{2}} \tag{1.8.9.4}$$

$$\implies \theta = 135^{\circ} \tag{1.8.9.5}$$

1.8.10 The slope of a line is double of the slope of another line. If tangent of the angle between them is 1/3, find the slopes of the lines.

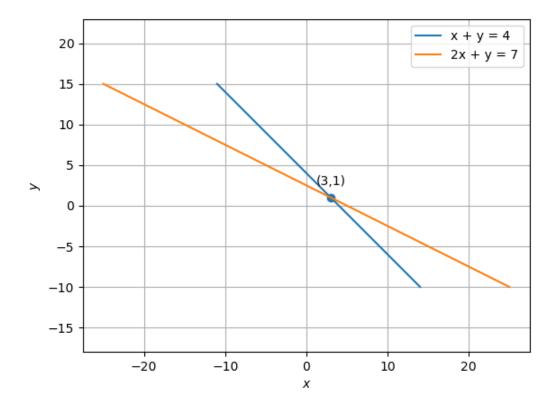


Figure 1.8.10.1:

**Solution:** The direction vector of a line is expressed as

$$\mathbf{m} = \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ m \end{pmatrix} \tag{1.8.10.1}$$

where m is defined to be the slope of the line. If the angle between the lines be  $\theta$ ,

$$\tan \theta = \frac{1}{3} \implies \cos \theta = \frac{3}{\sqrt{10}} \tag{1.8.10.2}$$

The angle between two vectors is then expressed as

$$\frac{3}{\sqrt{10}} = \frac{\mathbf{m}_1^{\top} \mathbf{m}_2}{\|\mathbf{m}_1\| \|\mathbf{m}_2\|}$$
 (1.8.10.3)

$$= \frac{\begin{pmatrix} 1 & m \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 2m \end{pmatrix}}{\left\| \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ m \end{pmatrix} \right\| \left\| \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 2m \end{pmatrix} \right\|}$$
(1.8.10.4)

$$=\frac{2m^2+1}{\sqrt{m^2+1}\sqrt{4m^2+1}}$$
 (1.8.10.5)

$$= \frac{2m^2 + 1}{\sqrt{m^2 + 1}\sqrt{4m^2 + 1}}$$

$$\implies \frac{9}{10} = \frac{4m^4 + 4m^2 + 1}{4m^4 + 5m^2 + 1}$$
(1.8.10.5)
$$(1.8.10.6)$$

or, 
$$4m^4 - 5m^2 + 1 = 0$$
 (1.8.10.7)

yielding

$$m = \pm \frac{1}{2}, \pm 1 \tag{1.8.10.8}$$

1.8.11 A line passes through  $(x_1, y_1)$  and (h, k). If slope of the line is m show that

$$(k-y_1)=m(h-x_1).$$

Solution: Given

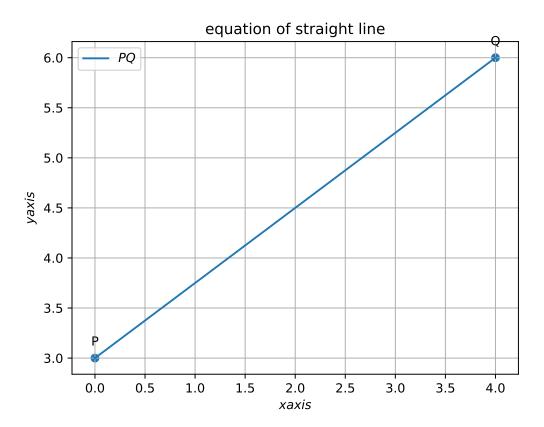


Figure 1.8.11.1:

$$\mathbf{A} = \begin{pmatrix} x_1 \\ y_1 \end{pmatrix}, \mathbf{B} = \begin{pmatrix} h \\ k \end{pmatrix} \tag{1.8.11.1}$$

The direction vector

$$\mathbf{m} = \mathbf{B} - \mathbf{A} \tag{1.8.11.2}$$

$$= \begin{pmatrix} h - x_1 \\ k - y_1 \end{pmatrix} \equiv \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ \frac{k - y_1}{h - x_1} \end{pmatrix} \tag{1.8.11.3}$$

which yields the desired relation from (A.1.18.1).

1.8.12 If three points (h,0),(a,b) and (0,k) lie on a line, show that

$$\frac{a}{h} + \frac{b}{k} = 1\tag{1.8.12.1}$$

Solution: Let

$$\mathbf{A} = \begin{pmatrix} h \\ 0 \end{pmatrix}, \mathbf{B} = \begin{pmatrix} a \\ b \end{pmatrix}, \mathbf{C} = \begin{pmatrix} 0 \\ k \end{pmatrix}$$
 (1.8.12.2)

Forming the matrix in (C.1.4.1), we obtain, upon row reduction

$$\begin{pmatrix} h - a & -b \\ h & -k \end{pmatrix} \xrightarrow{\frac{R_1}{h-a}} \begin{pmatrix} 1 & \frac{-b}{h-a} \\ h & -k \end{pmatrix}$$
 (1.8.12.3)

$$\stackrel{R_2 \to R_2 - hR_1}{\longleftrightarrow} \begin{pmatrix} 1 & \frac{-b}{h-a} \\ 0 & -k + \frac{bh}{h-a} \end{pmatrix}$$
(1.8.12.4)

For obtaining a rank 1 matrix,

$$-k + \frac{bh}{h - a} = 0 ag{1.8.12.5}$$

$$\implies \frac{a}{b} + \frac{b}{k} = 1 \tag{1.8.12.6}$$

upon simplification.

#### Chapter 2

# Line

# 2.1. Equation of a Line

2.1.1

2.1.2

2.1.3

2.1.4

2.1.5

2.1.6

2.1.7

2.1.8 The Vertices of Triangle PQR is  $\mathbf{P}(2,1), \mathbf{Q}(-2,3), \mathbf{R}(4,5)$ . Find the equation of the Median Through  $\mathbf{R}$ .

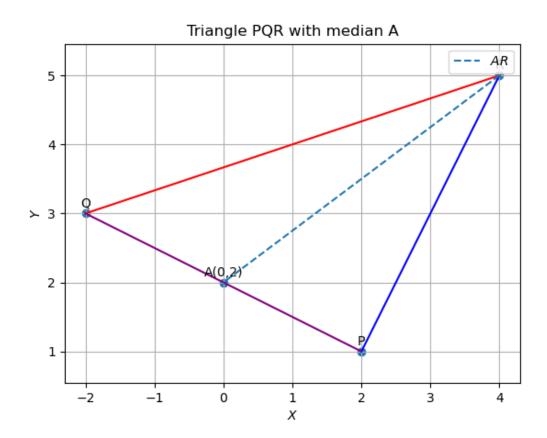


Figure 2.1.8.1:

Solution: See Fig. 2.1.8.1. Using Section Formula,

$$\mathbf{A} = \frac{\mathbf{P} + \mathbf{Q}}{2} \tag{2.1.8.1}$$

$$= \begin{pmatrix} 0 \\ 2 \end{pmatrix} \tag{2.1.8.2}$$

So , the Direction Vector of AR is

$$\mathbf{m} = \mathbf{R} - \mathbf{A} = \begin{pmatrix} 4 \\ 3 \end{pmatrix} \tag{2.1.8.3}$$

$$\implies \mathbf{n} = \begin{pmatrix} 3 \\ -4 \end{pmatrix} \tag{2.1.8.4}$$

which is the normal vector. Thus, from (C.1.2.1), the equation of the line is

$$\begin{pmatrix} 3 & -4 \end{pmatrix} (\mathbf{x} - \mathbf{R}) = 0 \tag{2.1.8.5}$$

$$\implies \left(3 \quad -4\right)\mathbf{x} = 8\tag{2.1.8.6}$$

2.1.9 Find the equation of the line passing through (-3,5) and perpendicular to the line through the points (2,5) and (-3,6).

Solution: Let

$$\mathbf{A} = \begin{pmatrix} 2 \\ 5 \end{pmatrix}, \mathbf{B} = \begin{pmatrix} -3 \\ 6 \end{pmatrix}, \mathbf{P} = \begin{pmatrix} -3 \\ 5 \end{pmatrix}$$
 (2.1.9.1)

The normal vector of the desired line is then given by

$$\mathbf{n} = \mathbf{B} - \mathbf{A} = \begin{pmatrix} 5 \\ -1 \end{pmatrix} \tag{2.1.9.2}$$

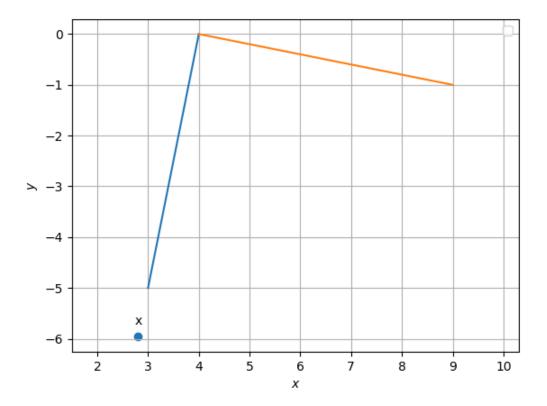


Figure 2.1.9.1:

Thus, the equation of the line is

$$\begin{pmatrix} 5 & -1 \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} \mathbf{x} - \begin{pmatrix} -3 \\ 5 \end{pmatrix} \end{pmatrix} = 0$$

$$\implies \begin{pmatrix} 5 & -1 \end{pmatrix} \mathbf{x} = -20$$
(2.1.9.4)

$$\Longrightarrow \left(5 \quad -1\right)\mathbf{x} = -20\tag{2.1.9.4}$$

2.1.10 A line perpendicular to the line segement joining the points (1,0) and (2,3) divides it in the ratio 1:n. Find the equation of the line.

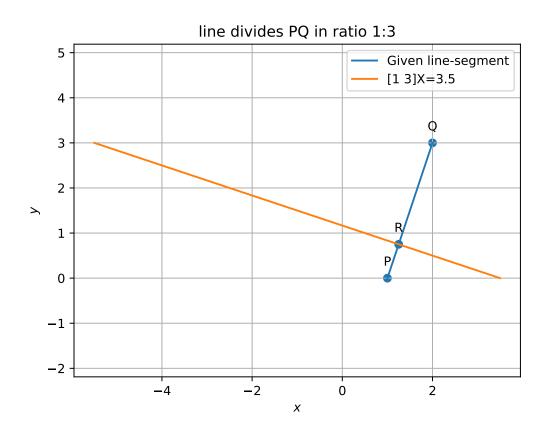


Figure 2.1.10.1:

Solution: Let

$$\mathbf{P} = \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 0 \end{pmatrix}, \mathbf{Q} = \begin{pmatrix} 2 \\ 3 \end{pmatrix} \tag{2.1.10.1}$$

The direction vector of PQ is

$$\mathbf{m} = \mathbf{Q} - \mathbf{P} = \begin{pmatrix} 1\\3 \end{pmatrix} \tag{2.1.10.2}$$

Also, using section formula,

$$\mathbf{R} = \frac{\mathbf{Q} + n\mathbf{P}}{1 + n} \tag{2.1.10.3}$$

and the equation of line passing through  $\mathbf{R}$  is

$$\mathbf{m}^{\top} \left( \mathbf{x} - \mathbf{R} \right) = 0 \tag{2.1.10.4}$$

$$\implies \left(1 \quad 3\right) \mathbf{x} = \left(1 \quad 3\right) \begin{pmatrix} \frac{2+n}{1+n} \\ \frac{3}{1+n} \end{pmatrix} \tag{2.1.10.5}$$

$$=\frac{11+n}{1+n}\tag{2.1.10.6}$$

#### 2.1.11

2.1.12 Find the equation of a line that cuts off equal intercepts on the coordinate axes and passes through the point (2,3).

**Solution:** Let  $\mathbf{P}(a,0)$ , and  $\mathbf{Q}(0,a)$  be the 2 points on x and y-axes respectively having a as the intercept on both the axes. We know that the direction vector  $\mathbf{m}$  of the line joining two points  $\mathbf{P}, \mathbf{Q}$  is given by

$$\mathbf{m} = \mathbf{P} - \mathbf{Q} \tag{2.1.12.1}$$

$$= \begin{pmatrix} a \\ 0 \end{pmatrix} - \begin{pmatrix} 0 \\ a \end{pmatrix} = a \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ -1 \end{pmatrix} \equiv \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ -1 \end{pmatrix} \tag{2.1.12.2}$$

Thus, the normal vector  $\mathbf{n}$  to the line is given as

$$\mathbf{n} = \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 1 \end{pmatrix} \tag{2.1.12.3}$$

The equation of a line with normal vector  $\mathbf{n}$  and passing through a point  $\mathbf{A}(2,3)$  is given by

$$\mathbf{n}^{\top} \left( \mathbf{x} - \mathbf{A} \right) = 0 \tag{2.1.12.4}$$

$$\begin{pmatrix} 1 & 1 \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} \mathbf{x} - \begin{pmatrix} 2 \\ 3 \end{pmatrix} \end{pmatrix} = 0$$
(2.1.12.5)

$$\begin{pmatrix} 1 & 1 \end{pmatrix} \mathbf{x} - 5 = 0 \tag{2.1.12.6}$$

$$\begin{pmatrix} 1 & 1 \end{pmatrix} \mathbf{x} = 5 \tag{2.1.12.7}$$

To find the intercepts, we know that, since P and Q lie on the straight line, they should satisfy (2.1.12.7).

$$\begin{pmatrix} 1 & 1 \end{pmatrix} \mathbf{P} = 5 \tag{2.1.12.8}$$

$$\begin{pmatrix} 1 & 1 \end{pmatrix} \mathbf{P} = 5 \tag{2.1.12.8}$$

$$\begin{pmatrix} 1 & 1 \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} a \\ 0 \end{pmatrix} = 5 \tag{2.1.12.9}$$

$$a + 0 = 5 (2.1.12.10)$$

$$a = 5 (2.1.12.11)$$

Both P and Q have the same intercept value, hence the intercept on both x and y-axes is 5 units. The line segment is as shown in Fig. 2.1.12.1.

2.1.13 Find equation of a line passing trough a point (2,2) and cutting off intercepts on the axes whose sum is 9.

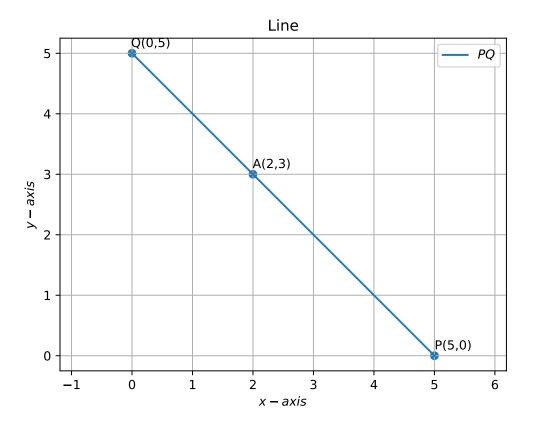


Figure 2.1.12.1:

**Solution:** Let the x intercept be a and the y intercept be b. Then

$$a + b = 9 (2.1.13.1)$$

Let

$$\mathbf{P} = \begin{pmatrix} a \\ 0 \end{pmatrix}, \mathbf{Q} = \begin{pmatrix} 0 \\ b \end{pmatrix}, \mathbf{R} = \begin{pmatrix} 2 \\ 2 \end{pmatrix}$$
 (2.1.13.2)

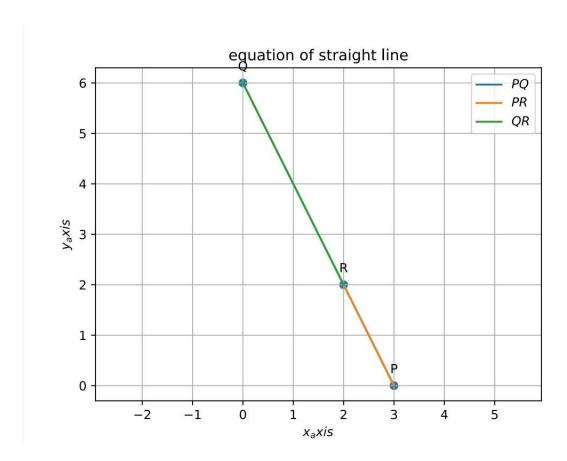


Figure 2.1.13.1:

Since the points are collinear, from (C.1.4.1), we obtain the matrix

$$\begin{pmatrix} \mathbf{P} - \mathbf{Q} & \mathbf{P} - \mathbf{R} \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} a & a - 2 \\ -b & -2 \end{pmatrix}$$
 (2.1.13.3)

which is singular if the determinant

$$-2a + b(a - 2) = ab - 2(a + b) = 0 (2.1.13.4)$$

yielding

$$ab = 18 (2.1.13.5)$$

upon substituting from (2.1.13.1). (2.1.13.5) and (2.1.13.1) form

$$x^2 - 9x + 18 = 0 (2.1.13.6)$$

with roots

$$x = 6,3 \tag{2.1.13.7}$$

or, 
$$\begin{pmatrix} a \\ b \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} 6 \\ 3 \end{pmatrix}, \begin{pmatrix} 3 \\ 6 \end{pmatrix}$$
 (2.1.13.8)

Since the direction vector of the line is

$$\mathbf{P} - \mathbf{Q} = \begin{pmatrix} a \\ -b \end{pmatrix},\tag{2.1.13.9}$$

the normal vector is

$$\mathbf{n} = \begin{pmatrix} b \\ a \end{pmatrix} \equiv \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 2 \end{pmatrix}, \begin{pmatrix} 2 \\ 1 \end{pmatrix} \tag{2.1.13.10}$$

Thus, the possible equations of the line are

$$\begin{pmatrix} 1 & 2 \end{pmatrix} \mathbf{x} = 6 \qquad (2.1.13.11)$$

$$\begin{pmatrix} 2 & 1 \end{pmatrix} \mathbf{x} = 6 \qquad (2.1.13.12)$$

$$\begin{pmatrix} 2 & 1 \end{pmatrix} \mathbf{x} = 6 \tag{2.1.13.12}$$

2.1.14 Find the equation of the line through the point (0,2) making an angle

$$2\pi/3$$
 (2.1.14.1)

with the positive X-axis. Also find the equation of the line parallel to it and crossing the Y-axis at a distance of 2 units below the origin

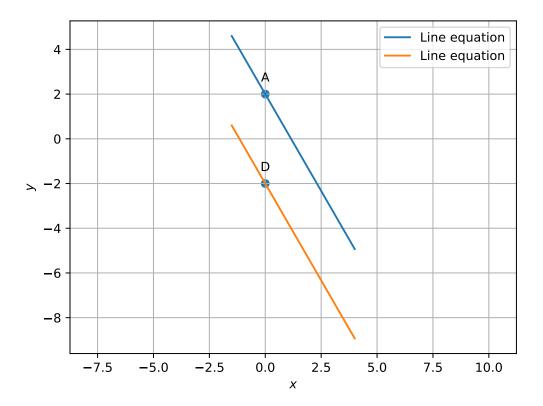


Figure 2.1.14.1:

**Solution:** From the given information, the direction vector is

$$\mathbf{m} = \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ -\sqrt{3} \end{pmatrix} \tag{2.1.14.2}$$

Thus, the normal vector is

$$\mathbf{n} = \begin{pmatrix} \sqrt{3} \\ 1 \end{pmatrix} \tag{2.1.14.3}$$

and the equation of the line is

$$\left(\sqrt{3} \quad 1\right) \left(\mathbf{x} - \begin{pmatrix} 0\\2 \end{pmatrix}\right) = 0 \tag{2.1.14.4}$$

$$\implies \left(\sqrt{3} \quad 1\right)\mathbf{x} = 2\tag{2.1.14.5}$$

The equation of the parallel crossing the Y-axis at a distance of 2 units below the origin is given by

$$\left(\sqrt{3} \quad 1\right) \left(\mathbf{x} - \begin{pmatrix} 0 \\ -2 \end{pmatrix}\right) = 0 \tag{2.1.14.6}$$

$$\implies \left(\sqrt{3} \quad 1\right)\mathbf{x} = -2\tag{2.1.14.7}$$

2.1.15 The perpendicular from the origin to a line meets it at the point (-2,9). Find the equation of the line.

#### Solution:

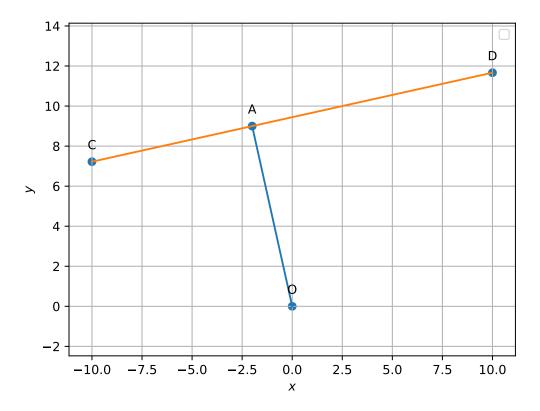


Figure 2.1.15.1:

Given

$$\mathbf{0} = \begin{pmatrix} 0 \\ 0 \end{pmatrix}, \mathbf{A} = \begin{pmatrix} -2 \\ 9 \end{pmatrix} \tag{2.1.15.1}$$

The normal vector is

$$\mathbf{n} = \mathbf{O} - \mathbf{A} \tag{2.1.15.2}$$

$$= \begin{pmatrix} 2 \\ -9 \end{pmatrix} \tag{2.1.15.3}$$

yielding the equation of the line as

$$\begin{pmatrix} 2 & -9 \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} \mathbf{x} - \begin{pmatrix} 2 \\ -9 \end{pmatrix} \end{pmatrix} = 0 \tag{2.1.15.4}$$

$$\implies \left(2 \quad -9\right)\mathbf{x} = 85\tag{2.1.15.5}$$

2.1.16

2.1.17

2.1.18

2.1.19

2.1.20 By using the concept of equation of a line, prove that the three points (3, 0), (-2, -2) and (8, 2) are collinear.

**Solution:** The collinearity matrix can be expressed as

$$\begin{pmatrix}
-5 & -2 \\
5 & 2
\end{pmatrix}
\xrightarrow{R_2 \leftarrow R_1 + R_2} = \begin{pmatrix}
-5 & -2 \\
0 & 0
\end{pmatrix}$$
(2.1.20.1)

which is a rank 1 matrix.

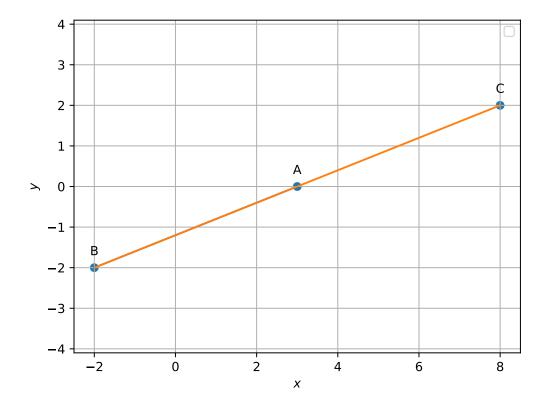


Figure 2.1.20.1:

# 2.2. General Equation of a Line

2.2.1

2.2.2

2.2.3

2.2.4 Find the distance of the point (-1,1) from the line 12(x+6) = 5(y-2).

Solution:

(a) The equation of the line is 12(x+6) = 5(y-2). Rearranging the equation,

$$12x - 5y = -10 - 72 \tag{2.2.4.1}$$

$$12x - 5y = -82 \tag{2.2.4.2}$$

This can be equated to

$$\mathbf{n}^{\top}\mathbf{x} = c \tag{2.2.4.3}$$

where 
$$\mathbf{n} = \begin{pmatrix} 12 \\ -5 \end{pmatrix}, c = -82$$
 (2.2.4.4)

We need to compute the distance from a point  $\mathbf{P}\begin{pmatrix} -1\\1 \end{pmatrix}$  to the line. Without loss of generality, let  $\mathbf{A}$  be the foot of the perpendicular from  $\mathbf{P}$  to the line in Equation (2.2.4.3). The equation of the normal to Equation (2.2.4.3) can then be expressed as

$$\mathbf{x} = \mathbf{A} + \lambda \mathbf{n} \tag{2.2.4.5}$$

$$\implies \mathbf{P} - \mathbf{A} = \lambda \mathbf{n} \tag{2.2.4.6}$$

 $\therefore$  **P** lies on (2.2.4.5). From the above, the desired distance can be expressed as

$$d = \|\mathbf{P} - \mathbf{A}\| = |\lambda| \|\mathbf{n}\| \tag{2.2.4.7}$$

From (2.2.4.6),

$$\mathbf{n}^{\top} (\mathbf{P} - \mathbf{A}) = \lambda \mathbf{n}^{\top} \mathbf{n} = \lambda \|\mathbf{n}\|^{2}$$
 (2.2.4.8)

$$\implies |\lambda| = \frac{\left|\mathbf{n}^{\top} \left(\mathbf{P} - \mathbf{A}\right)\right|}{\left\|\mathbf{n}\right\|^{2}}$$
 (2.2.4.9)

Substituting the above in (2.2.4.7) and using the fact that

$$\mathbf{n}^{\top} \mathbf{A} = c \tag{2.2.4.10}$$

from (2.2.4.3), yields

$$d = \frac{\left|\mathbf{n}^{\top}\mathbf{P} - c\right|}{\|\mathbf{n}\|} \tag{2.2.4.11}$$

$$= \frac{\left| \left( 12 -5 \right) \left( -1 \atop 1 \right) - (-82) \right|}{\sqrt{12^2 + (-5)^2}}$$
 (2.2.4.12)

$$=\frac{|-17+82|}{\sqrt{169}} = \frac{|65|}{13} = 5 \text{ units}$$
 (2.2.4.13)

(b) The foot of the perpendicular from  $\mathbf{P}\begin{pmatrix} -1\\1 \end{pmatrix}$  to line in (2.2.4.3) is expressed as

$$\begin{pmatrix} \mathbf{m} & \mathbf{n} \end{pmatrix}^{\top} \mathbf{A} = \begin{pmatrix} \mathbf{m}^{\top} \mathbf{P} \\ c \end{pmatrix}$$
 (2.2.4.14)

where  $\mathbf{m}$  is the direction vector of the given line

$$\mathbf{r} \cdot \mathbf{n} = \begin{pmatrix} 12 \\ -5 \end{pmatrix}, \mathbf{m} = \begin{pmatrix} 5 \\ 12 \end{pmatrix} \tag{2.2.4.15}$$

$$(2.2.4.14) \implies \begin{pmatrix} 5 & 12 \\ 12 & -5 \end{pmatrix} \mathbf{A} = \begin{pmatrix} 5 & 12 \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} -1 \\ 1 \end{pmatrix}$$

$$(2.2.4.16)$$

$$\begin{pmatrix} 5 & 12 \\ 12 & -5 \end{pmatrix} \mathbf{A} = \begin{pmatrix} 7 \\ -82 \end{pmatrix} \tag{2.2.4.17}$$

The augmented matrix for the system equations in (2.2.4.17) is expressed as

$$\begin{pmatrix}
5 & 12 & | & 7 \\
12 & -5 & | & -82
\end{pmatrix}$$
(2.2.4.18)

Performing sequence of row operations to transform into RREF form

$$\stackrel{R_2 \to R_2 - \frac{12}{5}R_1}{\longleftrightarrow} \begin{pmatrix} 5 & 12 & 7 \\ 0 & -\frac{169}{5} & -\frac{494}{5} \end{pmatrix}$$
(2.2.4.19)

$$\begin{array}{c|cccc}
 & R_2 \to \frac{-5}{169} R_2 \\
 & R_1 \to \frac{1}{5} R_1
\end{array}
\begin{array}{c|cccc}
 & 1 & \frac{12}{5} & | & \frac{7}{5} \\
 & 0 & 1 & | & \frac{38}{13}
\end{array}$$
(2.2.4.20)

$$\stackrel{R_1 \to R_1 - \frac{12}{5}R_2}{\longleftrightarrow} \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 0 & -\frac{73}{13} \\ 0 & 1 & \frac{38}{13} \end{pmatrix}$$
(2.2.4.21)

$$\mathbf{A} = \begin{pmatrix} -\frac{73}{13} \\ \frac{38}{13} \end{pmatrix} \tag{2.2.4.22}$$

The desired line and the perpendicular line from  ${\bf P}$  is shown as in Fig. 2.2.4.1

2.2.5

2.2.6

2.2.7 Find the equation of the line parallel to the line 3x-4y+2=0 and passing through the point (-2,3).

**Solution:** From the given information,

$$\mathbf{n} = \begin{pmatrix} 3 \\ -4 \end{pmatrix} \tag{2.2.7.1}$$

$$\implies \left(3 \quad -4\right) \left\{ \mathbf{x} - \begin{pmatrix} -2\\3 \end{pmatrix} \right\} = 0 \tag{2.2.7.2}$$

$$=-18$$
 (2.2.7.3)

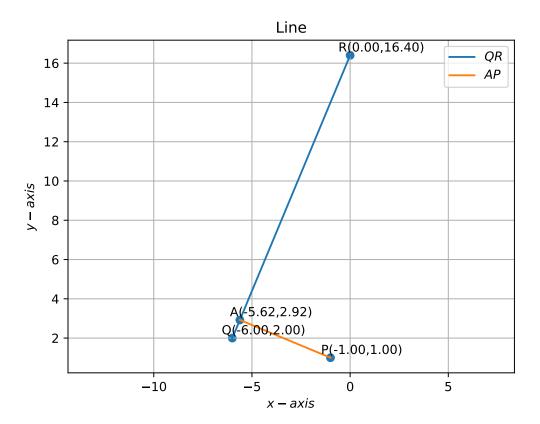


Figure 2.2.4.1:

which is the required equation of the line.

2.2.8

2.2.9 Find angle between the lines,  $\sqrt{3}x + y = 1$  and  $x + \sqrt{3}y = 1$ .

Solution: From the given equations, the normal vectors can be expressed as

$$\mathbf{n}_1 = \begin{pmatrix} \sqrt{3} \\ 1 \end{pmatrix}, \mathbf{n}_2 = \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ \sqrt{3} \end{pmatrix} \tag{2.2.9.1}$$

The angle between the lines can then be expressed as

$$cos\theta = \frac{\mathbf{n}_1^T \mathbf{n}_2}{\|\mathbf{n}_1\| \|\mathbf{n}_2\|}$$

$$= \frac{\sqrt{3}}{2}$$
(2.2.9.2)
$$(2.2.9.3)$$

$$=\frac{\sqrt{3}}{2} \tag{2.2.9.3}$$

or, 
$$\theta = 30^{\circ}$$
 (2.2.9.4)

2.2.10

2.2.11

2.2.12

2.2.13

2.2.14

2.2.15

2.2.16

2.2.17

2.2.18

#### 2.3. Miscellaneous Exercises

### Chapter 3

## Circles

#### 3.1. Equation

In each of the following exercises, find the equation of the circle with the following parameters

- 3.1.1 centre (0,2) and radius 2
- 3.1.2 centre (-2,3) and radius 4
- 3.1.3 centre  $(\frac{1}{2}, \frac{1}{4})$  and radius  $\frac{1}{12}$
- $3.1.4\,$  centre (1,1) and radius  $\sqrt{2}$
- 3.1.5 centre (-a, -b) and radius  $\sqrt{a^2 b^2}$ .

In each of the following exercises, find the centre and radius of the circles.

$$3.1.6 (x+5)^2 + (y-3)^2 = 36$$

$$3.1.7 \ x^2 + y^2 - 4x - 8y - 45 = 0$$

$$3.1.8 \ x^2 + y^2 - 8x + 10y - 12 = 0$$

$$3.1.9 \ 2x^2 + 2y^2 - x = 0$$

3.1.10 Find the equation of the circle passing through the points (4,1) and (6,5) and whose centre is on the line 4x + y = 16.

3.1.11 Find the equation of the circle passing through the points (2,3) and (-1,1) and whose centre is on the line x - 3y - 11 = 0.

Solution: See Fig. From (D.2.1.1), and the given information,

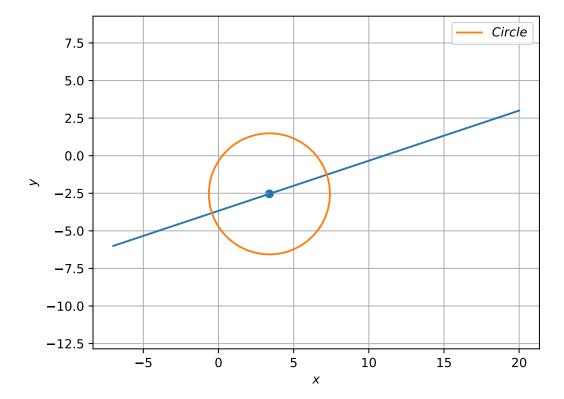


Figure 3.1.11.1:

$$\|\mathbf{P}\|^2 + 2\mathbf{u}^{\mathsf{T}}\mathbf{P} + f = 0 \tag{3.1.11.1}$$

$$\|\mathbf{Q}\|^2 + 2\mathbf{u}^{\mathsf{T}}\mathbf{Q} + f = 0 \tag{3.1.11.2}$$

$$-\mathbf{n}^{\mathsf{T}}\mathbf{u} = c \tag{3.1.11.3}$$

by noting that the centre of the circle is  $-\mathbf{u}$ . Substituting numerical values, we obtain the matrix equation

$$\begin{pmatrix} 4 & 6 & 1 \\ -2 & 2 & 1 \\ -1 & 3 & 0 \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} \mathbf{u} \\ f \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} -13 \\ -2 \\ 11 \end{pmatrix}$$
 (3.1.11.4)

(3.1.11.5)

The augmented matrix for (3.1.11.4) can be expressed as

$$\stackrel{1/4R_1 \leftrightarrow R_1}{\longleftrightarrow} \begin{pmatrix}
1 & 3/2 & .1/4 & -13/4 \\
-2 & 2 & 1 & -2 \\
-1 & 3 & 0 & 11
\end{pmatrix}$$
(3.1.11.6)

which can be reduced to echelon form using row operations to obtain

$$\mathbf{u} = \begin{pmatrix} -7/2 \\ 5/2 \end{pmatrix}, f = -14 \tag{3.1.11.7}$$

3.1.12 Find the equation of the circle with radius 5 whose centre lies on x-axis and passes through the point (2,3).

Solution: See Fig. 3.1.12.1. From the given information, the following equations can

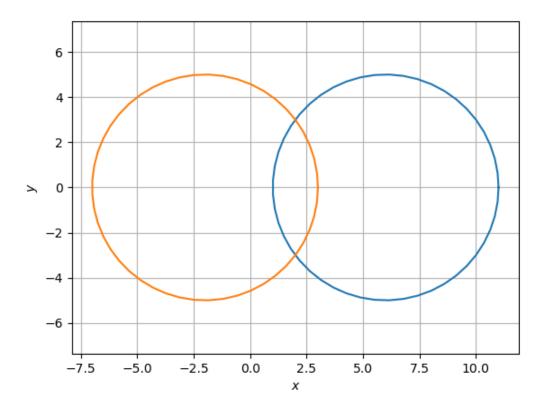


Figure 3.1.12.1:

be formulated using (D.2.1.1).

$$\|\mathbf{P}\|^2 + 2\mathbf{u}^{\mathsf{T}}\mathbf{P} + f = 0 \tag{3.1.12.1}$$

$$\mathbf{u} = k\mathbf{e}_1 \tag{3.1.12.2}$$

$$\|\mathbf{u}\|^2 - f = r^2 \tag{3.1.12.3}$$

where

$$\mathbf{P} = \begin{pmatrix} 2 \\ 3 \end{pmatrix} \text{ and } r = 5 \tag{3.1.12.4}$$

From (3.1.12.1) and (3.1.12.3),

$$\|\mathbf{P}\|^2 + 2\mathbf{u}^{\mathsf{T}}\mathbf{P} + \|\mathbf{u}\|^2 = r^2$$
 (3.1.12.5)

Substituting from (3.1.12.2) in the above,

$$k^{2} + 2k\mathbf{e}_{1}^{\mathsf{T}}\mathbf{P} + \|\mathbf{P}\|^{2} - r^{2} = 0$$
(3.1.12.6)

resulting in

$$k = -\mathbf{e}_1^{\mathsf{T}} \mathbf{P} \pm \sqrt{\left(\mathbf{e}_1^{\mathsf{T}} \mathbf{P}\right)^2 + r^2 - \|\mathbf{P}\|^2}$$
(3.1.12.7)

Substituting numerical values,

$$k = 2, -6 (3.1.12.8)$$

resulting in circles with centre

$$-\mathbf{u} = \begin{pmatrix} -2\\0 \end{pmatrix} \text{ or } \begin{pmatrix} 6\\0 \end{pmatrix}. \tag{3.1.12.9}$$

This is verified in Fig. (3.1.12.1).

3.1.13 Find the equation of the circle passing through (0,0) and making intercepts a and b

on the coordinate axes.

- 3.1.14 Find the equation of a circle with centre (2,2) and passes through the point (4,5).
- 3.1.15 Does the point (-2.5, 3.5) lie inside, outside or on the circle  $x^2 + y^2 = 25$ ?
- 3.1.16 Find the centre of a circle passing though the points (6,-6),(3,-7) and (3,3).

**Solution:** The equation of the circle is given by

$$\|\mathbf{x}\|^2 + 2\mathbf{x}^\top \mathbf{u} + f = 0 \tag{3.1.16.1}$$

where

$$\mathbf{u} = -\mathbf{c} \text{ and} \tag{3.1.16.2}$$

$$f = \|\mathbf{c}\|^2 - r^2 \tag{3.1.16.3}$$

Given points are

$$\mathbf{x_1} = \begin{pmatrix} 6 \\ -6 \end{pmatrix}, \mathbf{x_2} = \begin{pmatrix} 3 \\ -7 \end{pmatrix}, \mathbf{x_3} = \begin{pmatrix} 3 \\ 3 \end{pmatrix}$$
 (3.1.16.4)

Substituting points from (3.1.16.4) into (3.1.16.1)

$$\left(6^{2} + (-6)^{2}\right) + 2\left(6 - 6\right)\mathbf{u} + f = 0 \tag{3.1.16.5}$$

$$\implies 2\begin{pmatrix} 6 & -6 \end{pmatrix} \mathbf{u} + f = -72 \tag{3.1.16.6}$$

$$(3^{2} + (-7)^{2}) + 2(3 - 7)\mathbf{u} + f = 0$$
(3.1.16.7)

$$\implies 2\left(3 \quad -7\right)\mathbf{u} + f = -58\tag{3.1.16.8}$$

$$(3^2 + 3^2) + 2\begin{pmatrix} 3 & 3 \end{pmatrix} \mathbf{u} + f = 0$$
 (3.1.16.9)

$$\implies 2\left(3\quad 3\right)\mathbf{u} + f = -18\tag{3.1.16.10}$$

Representing the above system of equations in matrix form

$$\begin{pmatrix} 6 & -14 & 1 \\ 12 & -12 & 1 \\ 6 & 6 & 1 \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} \mathbf{u} \\ f \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} -58 \\ -72 \\ -18 \end{pmatrix}$$
(3.1.16.11)

The augmented matrix is expressed as

$$\begin{pmatrix}
6 & -14 & 1 & | & -58 \\
12 & -12 & 1 & | & -72 \\
6 & 6 & 1 & | & -18
\end{pmatrix}$$
(3.1.16.12)

Performing sequence of row operations to transform into an Echelon form

$$\stackrel{R_2 \to R_2 - 2R_1}{\longleftrightarrow} \begin{pmatrix} 6 & -14 & 1 & | & -58 \\ 0 & 16 & -1 & | & 44 \\ 6 & 6 & 1 & | & -18 \end{pmatrix}$$
(3.1.16.13)

$$\stackrel{R_3 \to R_3 - R_1}{\longleftrightarrow} \begin{pmatrix} 6 & -14 & 1 & | & -58 \\ 0 & 16 & -1 & | & 44 \\ 0 & 20 & 0 & | & 40 \end{pmatrix}$$
(3.1.16.14)

$$\stackrel{R_3 \to R_3 - \frac{20}{16}R_2}{\longleftrightarrow} \begin{pmatrix} 6 & -14 & 1 & | & -58 \\ 0 & 16 & -1 & | & 44 \\ 0 & 0 & \frac{20}{16} & | & -15 \end{pmatrix}$$
(3.1.16.15)

$$\frac{R_1 \to \frac{1}{6}R_1}{\stackrel{R}{\leftarrow} R_2 \to \frac{1}{16}R_2, R_3 \to \frac{16}{20}R_3} \begin{pmatrix}
1 & -\frac{14}{6} & \frac{1}{6} & -\frac{58}{6} \\
0 & 1 & -\frac{1}{16} & \frac{44}{16} \\
0 & 0 & 1 & -12
\end{pmatrix}$$
(3.1.16.16)

$$\stackrel{R_1 \to R_1 - \frac{1}{6}R_3}{\underset{R_2 \to R_2 + \frac{1}{16}R_3}{\longleftrightarrow}} \begin{pmatrix} 1 & -\frac{14}{6} & 0 & -\frac{46}{6} \\ 0 & 1 & 0 & 2 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 & -12 \end{pmatrix}$$
(3.1.16.17)

$$\stackrel{R_1 \to R_1 + \frac{14}{6}R_2}{\longleftrightarrow} \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 0 & 0 & -3 \\ 0 & 1 & 0 & 2 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 & -12 \end{pmatrix}$$
(3.1.16.18)

So, from (3.1.16.18)

$$\mathbf{u} = \begin{pmatrix} -3\\2 \end{pmatrix} \tag{3.1.16.19}$$

$$f = -12 (3.1.16.20)$$

Since  $\mathbf{u} = -\mathbf{c}$ ,

$$\mathbf{c} = \begin{pmatrix} 3 \\ -2 \end{pmatrix} \tag{3.1.16.21}$$

$$(3.1.16.3) \implies r^2 = \left(3^2 + (-2)^2\right) + 12 \tag{3.1.16.22}$$

$$r = 5 (3.1.16.23)$$

Therefore, the equation of the circle is

$$\left\| \mathbf{x} - \begin{pmatrix} 3 \\ -2 \end{pmatrix} \right\| = 5$$
 (3.1.16.24)

The relevant diagram is shown in Figure 3.1.16.1

#### 3.2. Construction of Tangents to a Circle

3.2.1 Draw a circle of radius 6 cm. From a point 10 cm away from its centre, construct the pair of tangents to the circle and measure their lengths.

**Solution:** Follow the approach in Problem 6.4.6.

3.2.2 Construct a tangent to a circle of radius 4cm from a point on the concentric circle of

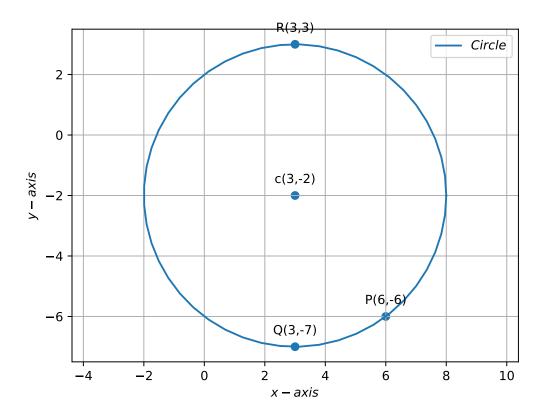


Figure 3.1.16.1:

radius 6cm and measure its length. Also verify the measurement by actual calculation. **Solution:** See Fig. 3.2.2.1.

3.2.3 Draw a circle of radius 3 cm. Take two points  $\mathbf{P}$  and  $\mathbf{Q}$  on one of its extended diameter each at a distance of 7 cm from its centre. Draw tangents to the circle from these two points  $\mathbf{P}$  and  $\mathbf{Q}$ .

Solution: See Fig. 3.2.3.1.

3.2.4 Draw a pair of tangents to a circle of radius 5 cm which are inclined to each other at

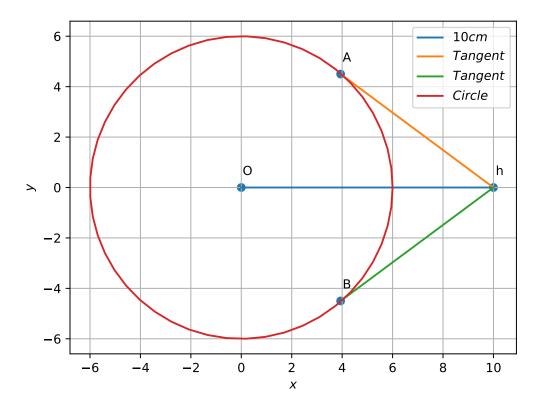


Figure 3.2.1.1:

an angle of  $60^{\circ}$ .

Solution: See Fig. 3.2.4.1.

3.2.5 Draw a line segment AB of length 8cm. Taking  $\bf A$  as centre, draw a circle of radius 4cm and taking  $\bf B$  as centre, draw another circle of radius 3cm. Construct tangents to each circle from the centre of the circle.

Solution: See Fig. 3.2.5.1.

3.2.6 Let ABC be a right triangle in which AB = 6cm, BC = 8cm and  $\angle B = 90^{\circ}$ . BD is the perpendicular from **B** on AC. The circle through **B**, **C**, **D** is drawn. Construct the

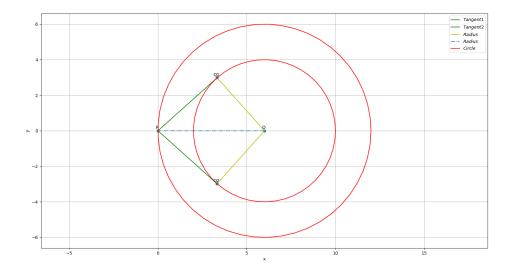


Figure 3.2.2.1:

tangents from A to this circle.

Solution: See Fig. 3.2.6.1.

$$BD \perp AC \implies \mathbf{O}$$
 =  $\frac{\mathbf{B} + \mathbf{C}}{2}$  (3.2.6.1)

From (C.1.11.1), the coordinates of  $\mathbf{D}$  can be obtained.

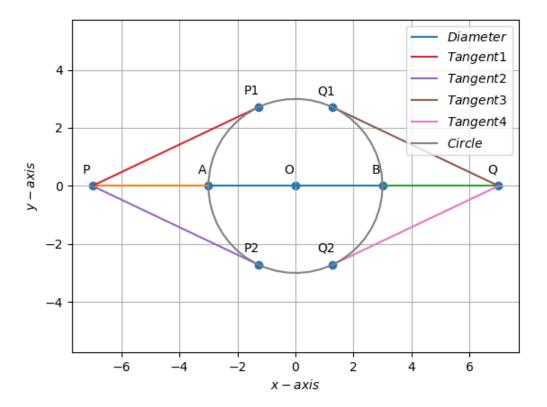


Figure 3.2.3.1:

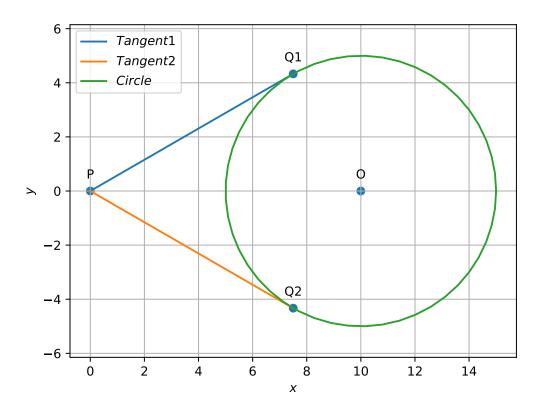


Figure 3.2.4.1:

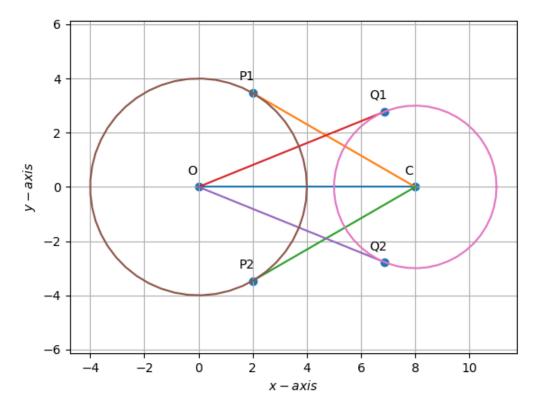


Figure 3.2.5.1:

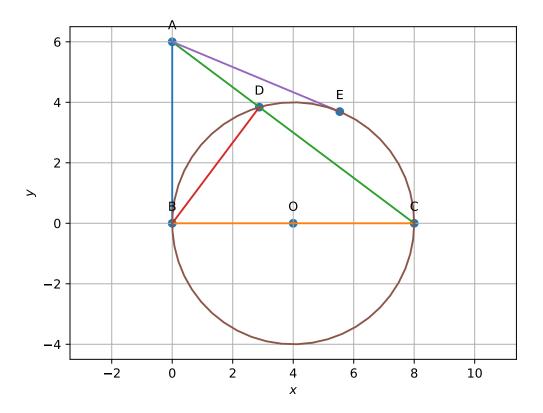


Figure 3.2.6.1:

#### Chapter 4

# **Triangle Constructions**

#### 4.1. Introduction

4.1.1 Construct a triangle ABC in which  $BC=7cm, \angle B=75^{\circ}$  and AB+AC=13cm.

Solution: See Fig. 4.1.1.1.

Using the cosine formula in  $\triangle ABC$ ,

$$b^2 = a^2 + c^2 - 2ac\cos B \tag{4.1.1.1}$$

$$\implies (b+c)(b-c) = a^2 - 2ac\cos B \tag{4.1.1.2}$$

or, 
$$K(b-c) = a^2 - 2ac\cos B$$
 (4.1.1.3)

where

$$K = b + c \tag{4.1.1.4}$$

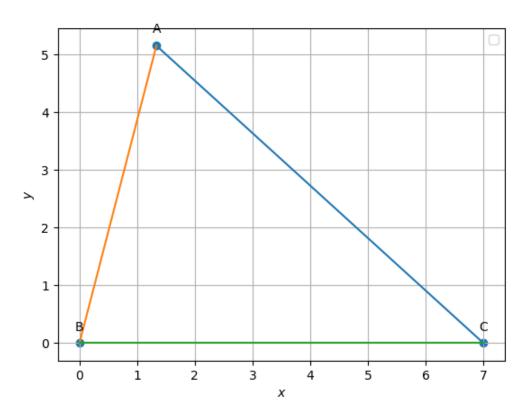


Figure 4.1.1.1:

From (4.1.1.3) and (4.1.1.4),

$$\begin{pmatrix} 1 & 1 \\ 1 & -1 \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} b \\ c \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} \frac{a^2 - 2ac\cos B}{K} \\ K \end{pmatrix} \tag{4.1.1.5}$$

$$\implies \begin{pmatrix} b \\ c \end{pmatrix} = \frac{1}{2} \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 1 \\ 1 & -1 \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} \frac{a^2 - 2ac \cos B}{K} \\ K \end{pmatrix} \tag{4.1.1.6}$$

$$\begin{array}{ccc}
 & \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 1 \\ 1 & -1 \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 1 \\ 1 & -1 \end{pmatrix} = 2\mathbf{I}
\end{array}$$
(4.1.1.7)

From (4.1.1.6)

$$c = \frac{1}{2} \mathbf{e}_2^{\top} \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 1 \\ 1 & -1 \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} \frac{a^2}{K} \\ K \end{pmatrix} - \frac{2ac \cos B}{K}$$
 (4.1.1.8)

$$\implies c = \frac{1}{2\left(1 + \frac{2a\cos B}{K}\right)} \mathbf{e}_2^{\top} \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 1\\ 1 & -1 \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} \frac{a^2}{K}\\ K \end{pmatrix} \tag{4.1.1.9}$$

The coordinates of  $\triangle ABC$  can then be expressed as

$$\mathbf{A} = c \begin{pmatrix} \cos B \\ \sin B \end{pmatrix}, \mathbf{B} = \mathbf{0}, \mathbf{C} = \begin{pmatrix} a \\ 0 \end{pmatrix}. \tag{4.1.1.10}$$

4.1.2 Construct a triangle ABC in which  $BC = 8cm, \angle B = 45^{\circ}$  and AB - AC = 3.5cm. Solution: See Fig. 4.1.2.1. Using the cosine formula in  $\triangle ABC$ ,

$$b^2 = a^2 + c^2 - 2ac\cos B \tag{4.1.2.1}$$

$$\implies (b+c)(b-c) = a^2 - 2ac\cos B$$
 (4.1.2.2)

or, 
$$K(b+c) = a^2 - 2ac\cos B$$
 (4.1.2.3)

where

$$-K = b - c$$
 (4.1.2.4)

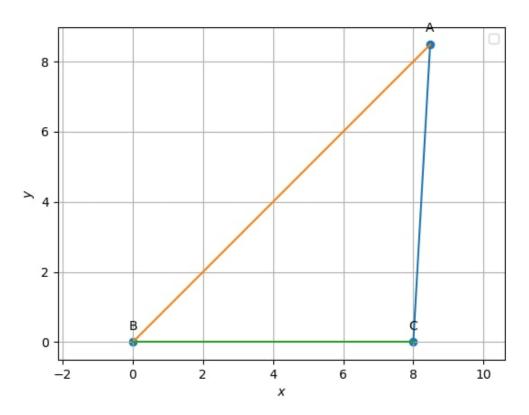


Figure 4.1.2.1:

From (4.1.2.3) and (4.1.2.4),

$$\begin{pmatrix} 1 & 1 \\ 1 & -1 \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} b \\ c \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} \frac{a^2 - 2ac\cos B}{K} \\ -K \end{pmatrix}$$
(4.1.2.5)

$$\implies \begin{pmatrix} b \\ c \end{pmatrix} = \frac{1}{2} \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 1 \\ 1 & -1 \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} \frac{a^2 - 2ac \cos B}{K} \\ -K \end{pmatrix}$$
 (4.1.2.6)

$$\begin{array}{ccc}
 & \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 1 \\ 1 & -1 \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 1 \\ 1 & -1 \end{pmatrix} = 2\mathbf{I}
\end{array}$$
(4.1.2.7)

From (4.1.2.6)

$$c = \frac{1}{2} \mathbf{e}_2^{\top} \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 1 \\ 1 & -1 \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} \frac{a^2}{K} \\ -K \end{pmatrix} - \frac{2ac \cos B}{K}$$
 (4.1.2.8)

$$\implies c = \frac{1}{2\left(1 + \frac{2a\cos B}{K}\right)} \mathbf{e}_2^{\top} \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 1\\ 1 & -1 \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} \frac{a^2}{K}\\ -K \end{pmatrix}$$
(4.1.2.9)

The coordinates of  $\triangle ABC$  can then be expressed as

$$\mathbf{A} = c \begin{pmatrix} \cos B \\ \sin B \end{pmatrix}, \mathbf{B} = \mathbf{0}, \mathbf{C} = \begin{pmatrix} a \\ 0 \end{pmatrix}. \tag{4.1.2.10}$$

4.1.3 Construct a triangle PQR in which  $QR = 6cm, \angle Q = 60^{\circ}$  and PR - PQ = 2cm.

Solution: Same as Problem 4.1.1 with

$$\angle Q = \angle B, QR = a, PR = b, PQ = c \tag{4.1.3.1}$$

4.1.4 Construct a triangle XYZ in which  $\angle Y = 30^{\circ}$ ,  $\angle Z = 90^{\circ}$  and XY + YZ + ZX = 11cm. Solution: From the given information,

$$x + y + z = K (4.1.4.1)$$

$$y\cos Z + z\cos Y - x = 0 \tag{4.1.4.2}$$

$$y\sin Z - z\sin Y = 0\tag{4.1.4.3}$$

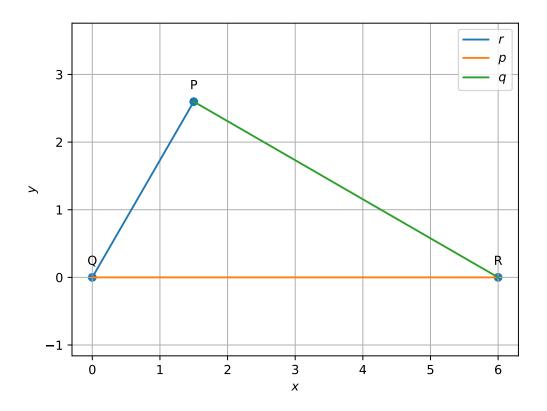


Figure 4.1.3.1:

resulting in the matrix equation

$$\begin{pmatrix} 1 & 1 & 1 \\ \cos Z & \cos Y & -1 \\ \sin Z & -\sin Y & 0 \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} x \\ y \\ z \end{pmatrix} = K\mathbf{e}_1$$
 (4.1.4.4)

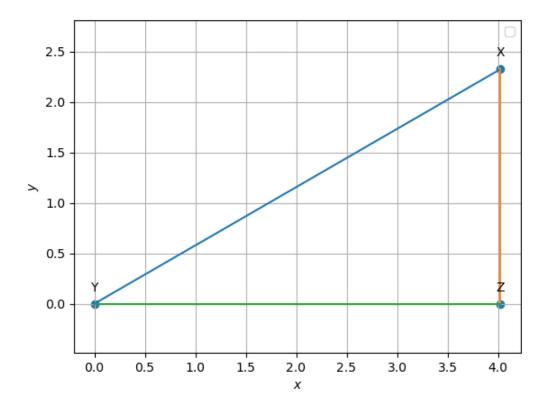


Figure 4.1.4.1:

which can be solved to obtain all the sides.  $\triangle XYZ$  can then be plotted using

$$\mathbf{X} = \begin{pmatrix} x \\ y \end{pmatrix}, \mathbf{Y} = \mathbf{0}, \mathbf{Z} = \begin{pmatrix} x \\ 0 \end{pmatrix}$$
 (4.1.4.5)

4.1.5 Construct a right triangle whose base is 12cm and sum of its hypotenuse and other side is 18cm.

Solution: From the given information, let

$$a = 12, \angle B = 90^{\circ}, b + c = 18$$
 (4.1.5.1)

We need to find b. This is similar to Problem 4.1.1.

#### 4.2. Properties

4.2.1 In the Figure 4.2.1.1, **E** is any point on median AD of a  $\triangle ABC$ . Show that

$$ar(ABE) = ar(ACE). (4.2.1.1)$$

Proof. From (A.1.3.1)

$$ar(BDE) = \frac{1}{2} \|\mathbf{B} \times \mathbf{D} + \mathbf{D} \times \mathbf{E} + \mathbf{E} \times \mathbf{B}\|$$
 (4.2.1.2)

$$= \frac{1}{2} \left\| \mathbf{B} \times \left( \frac{\mathbf{B} + \mathbf{C}}{2} \right) + \left( \frac{\mathbf{B} + \mathbf{C}}{2} \right) \times \mathbf{E} + \mathbf{E} \times \mathbf{B} \right\|$$
(4.2.1.3)

$$= \frac{1}{4} \| \mathbf{B} \times \mathbf{C} + \mathbf{C} \times \mathbf{E} + \mathbf{E} \times \mathbf{B} \|$$
 (4.2.1.4)

after simplification. Similarly, it can be shown that

$$ar(EDC) = \frac{1}{4} \|\mathbf{B} \times \mathbf{C} + \mathbf{C} \times \mathbf{E} + \mathbf{E} \times \mathbf{B}\|$$
 (4.2.1.5)

$$= ar (BDE) \tag{4.2.1.6}$$

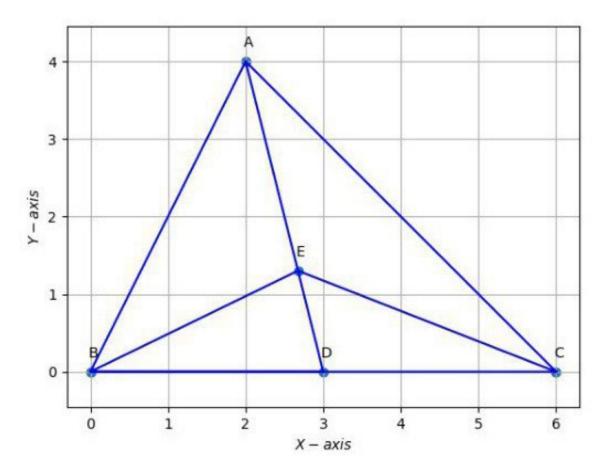


Figure 4.2.1.1:

The same approach can be used to show that

$$ar(ADB) = ar(ADC)$$
 (4.2.1.7)

Subtracting (4.2.1.6) from (4.2.1.7) yields (4.2.1.1)

4.2.2 In  $\triangle ABC$ , **E** is the mid-point of median AD. Show that

$$ar(\triangle BED) = \frac{1}{4}ar(\triangle ABC)$$
 (4.2.2.1)

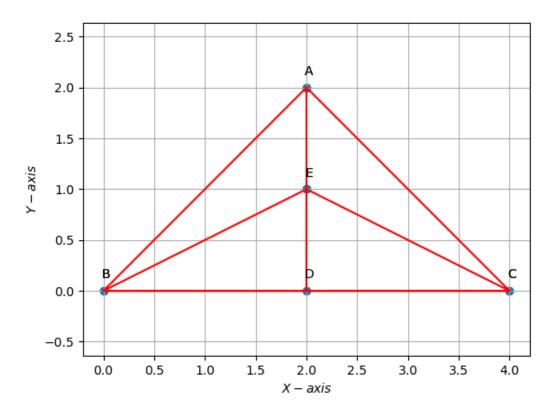


Figure 4.2.2.1:

Proof. From Problem 4.2.2,

$$ar(\triangle BED) = \frac{1}{4} \| \mathbf{B} \times \mathbf{C} + \mathbf{C} \times \mathbf{E} + \mathbf{E} \times \mathbf{B} \|$$
 (4.2.2.2)

Since

$$\mathbf{E} = \frac{\mathbf{A} + \mathbf{D}}{2} \tag{4.2.2.3}$$

$$=\frac{2\mathbf{A}+\mathbf{B}+\mathbf{C}}{4},\tag{4.2.2.4}$$

substituting the above in (4.2.2.2) yields

$$ar(\triangle BED) = \frac{1}{4} \left\| \mathbf{B} \times \mathbf{C} + \mathbf{C} \times \frac{2\mathbf{A} + \mathbf{B} + \mathbf{C}}{4} + \frac{2\mathbf{A} + \mathbf{B} + \mathbf{C}}{4} \times \mathbf{B} \right\|$$
 (4.2.2.5)

$$= \frac{1}{8} \| \mathbf{A} \times \mathbf{B} + \mathbf{B} \times \mathbf{C} + \mathbf{C} \times \mathbf{A} \|$$
 (4.2.2.6)

resulting in 
$$(4.2.2.1)$$
.

4.2.3 Show that the diagonals of a parallelogram divide it into four triangles of equal area.

Proof. See Fig. 4.2.3.1. From Appendix A.1.25 and A.1.3

$$ar(AOB) = \frac{1}{2} \|\mathbf{A} \times \mathbf{O} + \mathbf{O} \times \mathbf{B} + \mathbf{B} \times \mathbf{A}\|$$
 (4.2.3.1)

$$= \frac{1}{2} \left\| \mathbf{A} \times \left( \frac{\mathbf{A} + \mathbf{C}}{2} \right) + \left( \frac{\mathbf{A} + \mathbf{C}}{2} \right) \times \mathbf{B} + \mathbf{B} \times \mathbf{A} \right\|$$
(4.2.3.2)

$$= \frac{1}{4} \| \mathbf{A} \times \mathbf{C} + \mathbf{C} \times \mathbf{B} + \mathbf{B} \times \mathbf{A} \|$$
 (4.2.3.3)

yielding the desired result from Appendix A.1.26

4.2.4 ABC, ABD are 2 triangles on same base AB, if line segment CD is bisected by AB at  $\mathbf{O}$ , show that

$$ar(ABC) = ar(ABD) \tag{4.2.4.1}$$

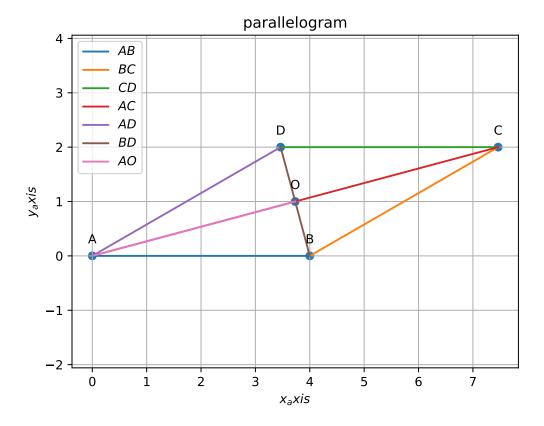


Figure 4.2.3.1:

*Proof.* See Fig. 4.2.4.1. AO and OB are medians of triangles ADC and BDC. From Appendix A.1.5, (4.2.4.1) is trivial.

4.2.5

4.2.6

4.2.7

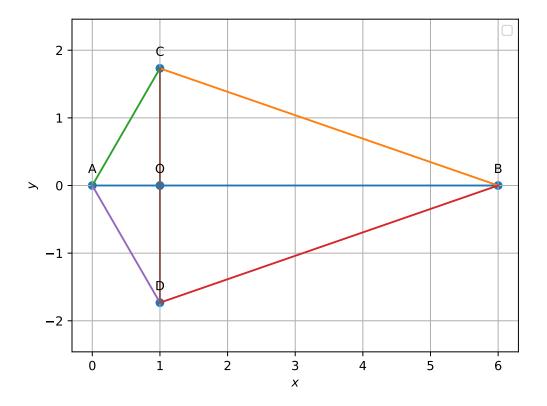


Figure 4.2.4.1:

4.2.8

4.2.9 The side AB of a parallelogram ABCD is produced to any point  ${\bf P}$ . A line through  ${\bf A}$  and parallel to CP meets CB produced at  ${\bf Q}$  and then parallelogram PBQR is completed. Show that

$$ar(ABCD) = ar(PBQR)$$
 (4.2.9.1)

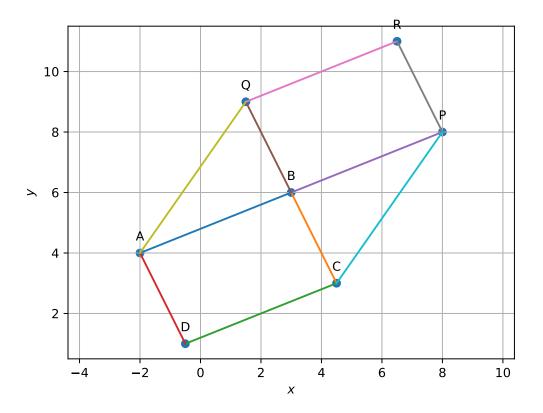


Figure 4.2.9.1:

*Proof.* From the given information, using section formula,

$$\mathbf{Q} = \frac{k_1 \mathbf{C} + \mathbf{B}}{k_1 + 1} \tag{4.2.9.2}$$

$$\mathbf{Q} = \frac{k_1 \mathbf{C} + \mathbf{B}}{k_1 + 1}$$

$$\mathbf{P} = \frac{k_2 \mathbf{A} + \mathbf{B}}{k_2 + 1}$$
(4.2.9.3)

Also, since  $AQ \parallel CP$ ,

$$\mathbf{A} - \mathbf{Q} = k \left( \mathbf{C} - \mathbf{P} \right) \tag{4.2.9.4}$$

Substituting from (4.2.9.2) and (4.2.9.3) in the above,

$$\mathbf{A} - \frac{k_1 \mathbf{C} + \mathbf{B}}{k_1 + 1} = k \left( \mathbf{C} - \frac{k_2 \mathbf{A} + \mathbf{B}}{k_2 + 1} \right)$$
 (4.2.9.5)

which, after some algebra, yields

$$\left(1 + \frac{kk_2}{k_2 + 1}\right)\mathbf{A} + \left(\frac{k}{k_2 + 1} - \frac{1}{k_1 + 1}\right)\mathbf{B} - \left(\frac{k_1}{k_1 + 1} + k\right)\mathbf{C} = \mathbf{0}$$
(4.2.9.6)

From Appendix A.1.27, (4.2.9.6) results in

$$\left(\frac{k}{k_2+1} - \frac{1}{k_1+1}\right) = \left(\frac{k_1}{k_1+1} + k\right) = 0 \tag{4.2.9.7}$$

or, 
$$k_1 + k_2 = -1$$
 (4.2.9.8)

From Appendix A.1.26

$$ar(PBQR) = \|\mathbf{P} \times \mathbf{B} + \mathbf{B} \times \mathbf{Q} + \mathbf{Q} \times \mathbf{P}\|$$
 (4.2.9.9)

The R.H.S. in the above can be expressed as

$$\frac{k_2 \mathbf{A} + \mathbf{B}}{k_2 + 1} \times \mathbf{B} + \mathbf{B} \times \frac{k_1 \mathbf{C} + \mathbf{B}}{k_1 + 1} + \frac{k_1 \mathbf{C} + \mathbf{B}}{k_1 + 1} \times \frac{k_2 \mathbf{A} + \mathbf{B}}{k_2 + 1}$$
(4.2.9.10)

leading to

$$\left(\frac{k_2}{k_2+1} - \frac{k_2}{(k_1+1)(k_2+1)}\right) \mathbf{A} \times \mathbf{B} 
+ \mathbf{B} \times \mathbf{C} \left(\frac{k_1}{k_1+1} - \frac{k_1}{(k_1+1)(k_2+1)}\right) 
+ \frac{k_1 k_2}{(k_1+1)(k_2+1)} \mathbf{C} \times \mathbf{A} \quad (4.2.9.11)$$

that can be simplified to obtain

$$ar(PBQR) = \frac{k_1 k_2}{(k_1 + 1)(k_2 + 1)} \| (\mathbf{A} \times \mathbf{B} + \mathbf{B} \times \mathbf{C} + \mathbf{C} \times \mathbf{A}) \|$$
 (4.2.9.12)

$$= \|(\mathbf{A} \times \mathbf{B} + \mathbf{B} \times \mathbf{C} + \mathbf{C} \times \mathbf{A})\|$$
 (4.2.9.13)

using the fact that

$$\frac{k_1 k_2}{(k_1 + 1)(k_2 + 1)} = 1 (4.2.9.14)$$

from (4.2.9.8). Also, from Appendix A.1.26,

$$ar(ABCD) = \|(\mathbf{A} \times \mathbf{B} + \mathbf{B} \times \mathbf{C} + \mathbf{C} \times \mathbf{A})\|$$
 (4.2.9.15)

yielding 
$$(4.2.9.1)$$
 from  $(4.2.9.13)$ .

4.2.10

4.2.11 ABCDE is a pentagon. A line through **B** parallel to AC meets DC produced at F. Show that

$$ar(ACB) = ar(ACF) (4.2.11.1)$$

$$ar(AEDF) = ar(ABCDE)$$
 (4.2.11.2)

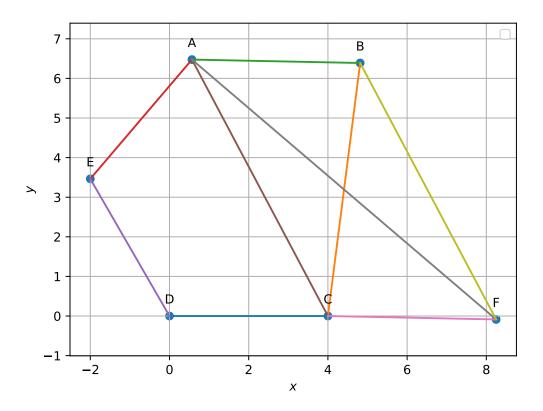


Figure 4.2.11.1:

*Proof.* Since  $BF \parallel AC$ ,

$$\mathbf{F} - \mathbf{B} = k \left( \mathbf{C} - \mathbf{A} \right) \tag{4.2.11.3}$$

$$\implies \mathbf{F} = \mathbf{B} + k \left( \mathbf{C} - \mathbf{A} \right) \tag{4.2.11.4}$$

Thus, from Appendix A.1.3,

$$ar(ACF) = \frac{1}{2} \| \mathbf{F} \times \mathbf{A} + \mathbf{A} \times \mathbf{C} + \mathbf{C} \times \mathbf{F} \|$$
 (4.2.11.5)

Substituting from (4.2.11.4) in (4.2.11.5),

$$ar(ACF) = \frac{1}{2} \| \{ \mathbf{B} + k (\mathbf{C} - \mathbf{A}) \} \times \mathbf{A} + \mathbf{A} \times \mathbf{C} + \mathbf{C} \times \{ \mathbf{B} + k (\mathbf{C} - \mathbf{A}) \} \|$$
(4.2.11.6)  
$$= \frac{1}{2} \| \mathbf{B} \times \mathbf{A} + \mathbf{A} \times \mathbf{C} + \mathbf{C} \times \mathbf{B} \|$$
(4.2.11.7)  
$$= ar (ACB)$$
(4.2.11.8)

upon substituting from from Appendix A.1.3. (4.2.11.2) follows from (4.2.11.1).

- 4.2.12
- 4.2.13
- 4.2.14
- 4.2.15
- 4.2.16 In the Figure 4.2.16.1,

$$ar(DRC) = ar(DPC) \tag{4.2.16.1}$$

$$ar(BDP) = ar(ARC). (4.2.16.2)$$

Show that the quadrilaterals ABCD and DCPR are trapeziums.

*Proof.* From Appendix A.1.4 and (4.2.16.1),

$$\frac{1}{2} \| (\mathbf{D} - \mathbf{R}) \times (\mathbf{D} - \mathbf{C}) \| = \frac{1}{2} \| (\mathbf{C} - \mathbf{D}) \times (\mathbf{C} - \mathbf{P}) \|$$

$$(4.2.16.3)$$

$$\implies (\mathbf{D} - \mathbf{R}) \times (\mathbf{D} - \mathbf{C}) = (\mathbf{C} - \mathbf{D}) \times (\mathbf{C} - \mathbf{P}) \tag{4.2.16.4}$$

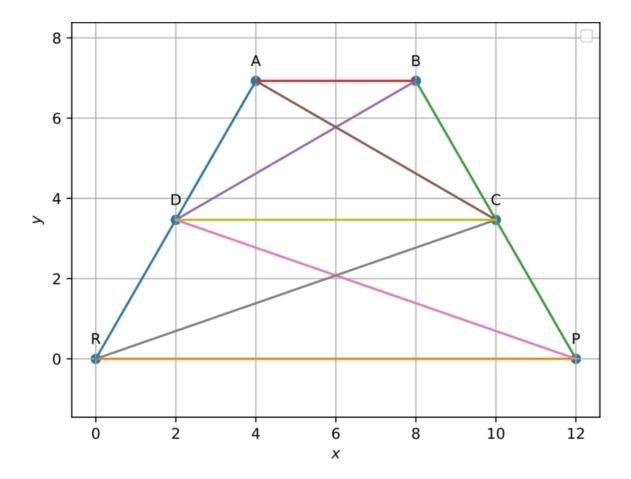


Figure 4.2.16.1:

which can be expressed as

$$(\mathbf{C} - \mathbf{D}) \times (\mathbf{C} - \mathbf{D} + \mathbf{R} - \mathbf{P}) = \mathbf{0} \tag{4.2.16.5}$$

$$\implies (\mathbf{C} - \mathbf{D}) \times (\mathbf{R} - \mathbf{P}) = \mathbf{0} \tag{4.2.16.6}$$

or, 
$$CD \parallel RP$$
 (4.2.16.7)

Hence, DCPR is a trapezium. Similarly, it can be shown that ABCD is also a trapezium.

### Chapter 5

# Quadrilateral Construction

### 5.1. Properties

- 5.1.1 The angles of quadrilateral are in the ratio 3:5:9:13. Find all the angles of the quadrilateral.
- 5.1.2 If diagonals of a parallelogram are equal then show that it is a rectangle.

**Solution:** See Fig. 5.1.2.1. From (A.1.24.1),

$$\mathbf{B} - \mathbf{A} = \mathbf{C} - \mathbf{D} \tag{5.1.2.1}$$

$$\implies \mathbf{B} - \mathbf{C} = \mathbf{A} - \mathbf{D} \tag{5.1.2.2}$$

Also, it is given that the diagonals of ABCD are equal. Hence,

$$\|\mathbf{C} - \mathbf{A}\|^2 = \|\mathbf{D} - \mathbf{B}\|^2 \tag{5.1.2.3}$$

$$\implies \|(\mathbf{C} - \mathbf{B}) + (\mathbf{B} - \mathbf{A})\|^2 = \|(\mathbf{D} - \mathbf{C}) + (\mathbf{C} - \mathbf{B})\|^2$$
(5.1.2.4)



Figure 5.1.2.1:

which can be expressed as

$$\|\mathbf{C} - \mathbf{B}\|^2 + \|\mathbf{B} - \mathbf{A}\|^2 + 2(\mathbf{C} - \mathbf{B})^{\top}(\mathbf{B} - \mathbf{A})$$
$$= \|\mathbf{D} - \mathbf{C}\|^2 + \|\mathbf{C} - \mathbf{B}\|^2 + 2(\mathbf{D} - \mathbf{C})^{\top}(\mathbf{C} - \mathbf{B}) \quad (5.1.2.5)$$

which, can be simplified to obtain

$$(\mathbf{C} - \mathbf{B})^{\top} (\mathbf{B} - \mathbf{A}) = (\mathbf{D} - \mathbf{C})^{\top} (\mathbf{C} - \mathbf{B})$$
 (5.1.2.6)

since

$$\|\mathbf{D} - \mathbf{C}\| = \|\mathbf{B} - \mathbf{A}\| \tag{5.1.2.7}$$

yielding

$$(\mathbf{A} - \mathbf{B})^{\mathsf{T}} (\mathbf{B} - \mathbf{C}) = \mathbf{0} \tag{5.1.2.8}$$

from (5.1.2.1).

5.1.3 Show that if the diagonals of a quadrilateral bisect each other at right angles, then it is a rhombus.

Solution: See Fig. 5.1.3.1. From the given information,

$$\frac{\mathbf{B} + \mathbf{D}}{2} = \frac{\mathbf{A} + \mathbf{C}}{2} \tag{5.1.3.1}$$

$$(\mathbf{B} - \mathbf{D})^{\top} (\mathbf{A} - \mathbf{C}) = 0 \tag{5.1.3.2}$$

From (5.1.3.1),

$$\mathbf{B} - \mathbf{A} = \mathbf{C} - \mathbf{D} \tag{5.1.3.3}$$

which, from (A.1.24.1), is the definition of a parallelogram. Further, substituting

$$\mathbf{B} - \mathbf{D} = (\mathbf{B} - \mathbf{A}) + (\mathbf{A} - \mathbf{D}) \tag{5.1.3.4}$$

$$\mathbf{A} - \mathbf{C} = (\mathbf{A} - \mathbf{B}) + (\mathbf{B} - \mathbf{C}) \tag{5.1.3.5}$$

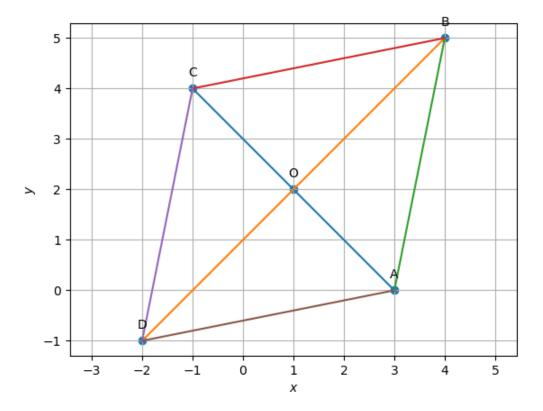


Figure 5.1.3.1: Rhombus

in (5.1.3.2),

$$[(\mathbf{B} - \mathbf{A}) + (\mathbf{A} - \mathbf{D})]^{\top} [(\mathbf{A} - \mathbf{B}) + (\mathbf{B} - \mathbf{C})] = 0$$

$$\implies -\|\mathbf{B} - \mathbf{A}\|^{2} + (\mathbf{B} - \mathbf{A})^{\top} (\mathbf{B} - \mathbf{C}) + (\mathbf{A} - \mathbf{D})^{\top} (\mathbf{A} - \mathbf{B}) + (\mathbf{A} - \mathbf{D})^{\top} (\mathbf{B} - \mathbf{C}) = 0 \quad (5.1.3.6)$$

From (5.1.3.3),

$$\mathbf{B} - \mathbf{C} = \mathbf{A} - \mathbf{D} \tag{5.1.3.7}$$

$$\implies (\mathbf{B} - \mathbf{A})^{\top} (\mathbf{B} - \mathbf{C}) + (\mathbf{A} - \mathbf{D})^{\top} (\mathbf{A} - \mathbf{B}) = \mathbf{0}$$
 (5.1.3.8)

and

$$(\mathbf{A} - \mathbf{D})^{\top} (\mathbf{B} - \mathbf{C}) = \|\mathbf{B} - \mathbf{C}\|^{2}$$
(5.1.3.9)

Substituting from

(5.1.3.8) and (5.1.3.9) in (5.1.3.6),

$$\|\mathbf{A} - \mathbf{B}\|^2 = \|\mathbf{B} - \mathbf{C}\|^2$$
 (5.1.3.10)

which means that the adjacent sides of the parallelogram are equal. Thus, the quadrilateral is a rhombus

5.1.4 Show that the diagonals of a square are equal and bisect each other at right angles. **Solution:** This is obvious from Problems (5.1.2) and (5.1.3).

5.1.5

- 5.1.6 Diagonal AC of a parallelogram ABCD bisects  $\angle A$  in Fig (5.1.6.1). Show that
  - (a) it bisects  $\angle C$  also
  - (b) ABCD is a rhombus

Solution:

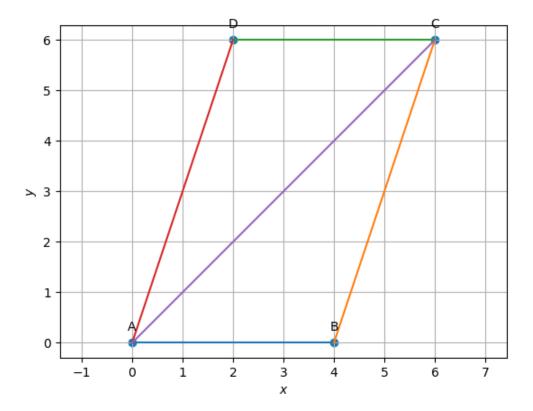


Figure 5.1.6.1:

(a) From (A.1.12.1),

$$\angle BAC = \angle DAC \tag{5.1.6.1}$$

$$\implies \frac{(\mathbf{A} - \mathbf{B})^T (\mathbf{A} - \mathbf{C})}{\|\mathbf{A} - \mathbf{B}\| \|\mathbf{A} - \mathbf{C}\|} = \frac{(\mathbf{A} - \mathbf{D})^T (\mathbf{A} - \mathbf{C})}{\|\mathbf{A} - \mathbf{D}\| \|\mathbf{A} - \mathbf{C}\|}$$
(5.1.6.2)

Also,

$$\cos \angle ACD = \frac{(\mathbf{C} - \mathbf{D})^T (\mathbf{C} - \mathbf{A})}{\|\mathbf{C} - \mathbf{D}\| \|\mathbf{C} - \mathbf{A}\|}$$
(5.1.6.3)

From Appendix A.1.24.1,

$$\mathbf{B} - \mathbf{A} = \mathbf{C} - \mathbf{D} \tag{5.1.6.4}$$

$$\implies \frac{(\mathbf{C} - \mathbf{D})^T (\mathbf{C} - \mathbf{A})}{\|\mathbf{C} - \mathbf{D}\| \|\mathbf{C} - \mathbf{A}\|} = \frac{(\mathbf{B} - \mathbf{A})^T (\mathbf{C} - \mathbf{A})}{\|\mathbf{B} - \mathbf{A}\| \|\mathbf{C} - \mathbf{A}\|}$$
(5.1.6.5)

upon substituting in (5.1.6.3). Thus, from (5.1.6.3) and (5.1.6.1),

$$\angle BAC = \angle DAC = \angle ACD \tag{5.1.6.6}$$

Similarly, it can be shown that

$$\angle ACD = \angle ACB \tag{5.1.6.7}$$

(b)

5.1.7 ABCD is a rhombus. Show that the diagonal AC bisects angle A as well as angle C and diagonal BD bisects angle B as well as angle D.

**Solution:** For the rhombus in Fig. 5.1.7.1,

$$\|\mathbf{A} - \mathbf{B}\| = \|\mathbf{A} - \mathbf{D}\|$$

$$\mathbf{A} - \mathbf{B} = \mathbf{D} - \mathbf{C}$$
(5.1.7.1)

From (A.1.12.1),

$$\cos \angle BAC = \frac{(\mathbf{A} - \mathbf{B})^{T}(\mathbf{A} - \mathbf{C})}{\|\mathbf{A} - \mathbf{B}\| \|\mathbf{A} - \mathbf{C}\|}$$
$$\cos \angle DAC = \frac{(\mathbf{C} - \mathbf{D})^{T}(\mathbf{C} - \mathbf{A})}{\|\mathbf{C} - \mathbf{D}\| \|\mathbf{C} - \mathbf{A}\|}$$
(5.1.7.2)

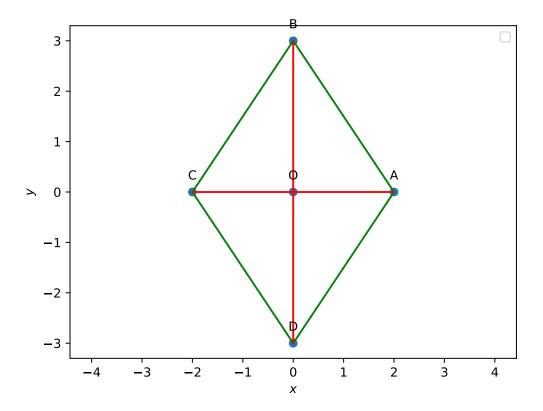


Figure 5.1.7.1:

From (5.1.7.1) and (5.1.7.2), we obtain

$$\cos \angle BAC = \cos \angle DAC \tag{5.1.7.3}$$

Thus, AC bisects  $\angle A$ . Similarly, the remaining results can be proved.

5.1.8

- 5.1.9 In parallelogram ABCD, two points  ${\bf P}$  and  ${\bf Q}$  are taken on diagonal BD such that DP=BQ. Show that
  - (a)  $\triangle APD \cong \triangle CQB$
  - (b) AP = CQ
  - (c)  $\triangle AQB \cong \triangle CPD$
  - (d) AQ = CP
  - (e) APCQ is a parallelogram

Solution: See Fig. 5.1.9.1.

From (A.1.12.1) and the given information,

$$\mathbf{A} - \mathbf{B} = \mathbf{D} - \mathbf{C} \tag{5.1.9.1}$$

$$\implies \mathbf{A} - \mathbf{D} = \mathbf{B} - \mathbf{C} \tag{5.1.9.2}$$

$$\mathbf{B} - \mathbf{Q} = \mathbf{P} - \mathbf{D} \quad \text{(given)} \tag{5.1.9.3}$$

From (5.1.9.1) and (5.1.9.3)

$$\mathbf{A} - \mathbf{P} = \mathbf{Q} - \mathbf{C} \tag{5.1.9.4}$$

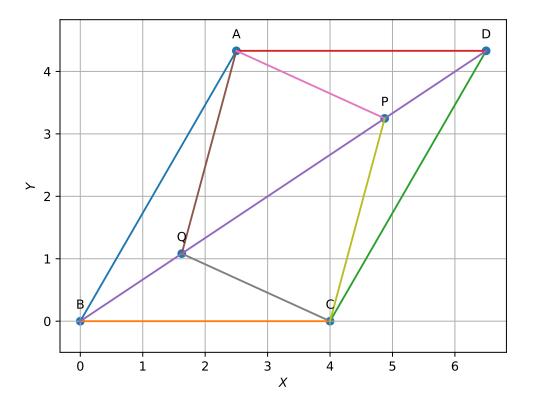


Figure 5.1.9.1:

(a) From (5.1.9.1), (5.1.9.3) and (5.1.9.4) taking the norms of the respective sides,

$$\triangle APD \cong \triangle CQB \tag{5.1.9.5}$$

(b) From (5.1.9.4), taking the norm,

$$AP = CQ (5.1.9.6)$$

(c) From (5.1.9.1), (5.1.9.3) and (5.1.9.4) taking the norms of the respective sides,

$$\triangle AQB \cong \triangle CPD \tag{5.1.9.7}$$

(d) From (5.1.9.4),

$$AQ = CP (5.1.9.8)$$

- 5.1.10 ABCD is a parallelogram and AP and CQ are perpendiculars from vertices  ${\bf A}$  and  ${\bf C}$  on diagonal BD . Show that
  - (a)  $\triangle APB \cong \triangle CQD$
  - (b) AP = CQ

**Solution:** From Fig. 5.1.10.1, and (A.1.12.1),

$$\cos \angle ABD = \frac{(\mathbf{A} - \mathbf{B})^T (\mathbf{D} - \mathbf{B})}{\|\mathbf{A} - \mathbf{B}\| \|\mathbf{D} - \mathbf{B}\|}$$
$$\cos \angle CDB = \frac{(\mathbf{C} - \mathbf{D})^T (\mathbf{B} - \mathbf{D})}{\|\mathbf{C} - \mathbf{D}\| \|\mathbf{B} - \mathbf{D}\|}$$
(5.1.10.1)

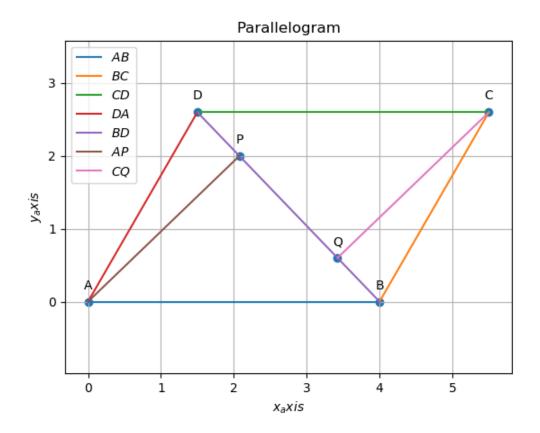


Figure 5.1.10.1:

From Appendix A.1.24.1,

$$\mathbf{A} - \mathbf{B} = \mathbf{D} - \mathbf{C} \tag{5.1.10.2}$$

Substituting in (5.1.10.1),

$$\cos \angle ABD = \cos \angle CDB \tag{5.1.10.3}$$

Using SAS congruence, 5.1.10a is proved. 5.1.10b follows from 5.1.10a.

- 5.1.11 In  $\triangle ABC$  and  $\triangle DEF$ , AB = DE,  $AB \parallel DE$ , BC = EF and  $BC \parallel EF$ . Vertices  $\mathbf{A}$ ,  $\mathbf{B}$  and  $\mathbf{C}$  are joined to vertices  $\mathbf{D}$ ,  $\mathbf{E}$  and  $\mathbf{F}$  respectively (see Figure 5.1.11.1). Show that
  - (a) quadrilateral ABED is a parallelogram
  - (b) quadrilateral BEFC is a parallelogram
  - (c)  $AD \parallel CF$  and AD = CF
  - (d) quadrilateral ACFD is a parallelogram
  - (e) AC = DF
  - (f)  $\triangle ABC \cong \triangle DEF$ .

**Solution:** From the given information

$$\mathbf{A} - \mathbf{B} = \mathbf{D} - \mathbf{E} \tag{5.1.11.1}$$

$$\mathbf{B} - \mathbf{E} = \mathbf{C} - \mathbf{F} \tag{5.1.11.2}$$

- (a) From Appendix A.1.24.1, (5.1.11.1) defines the parallelogram ABED.
- (b) Similarly, (5.1.11.2) defines the parallelogram BEFC.

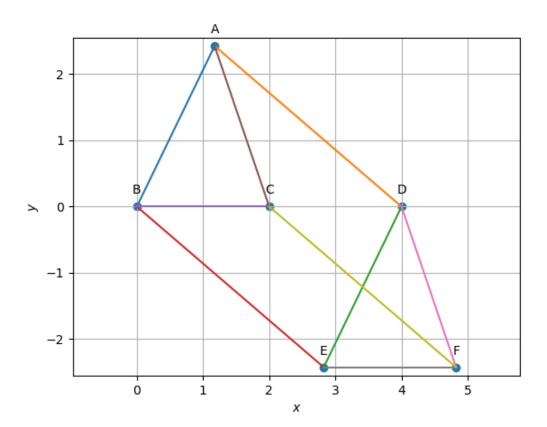


Figure 5.1.11.1:

(c) From (5.1.11.1) and (5.1.11.2),

$$\mathbf{A} - \mathbf{D} = \mathbf{C} - \mathbf{F} \tag{5.1.11.3}$$

which yields 5.1.11c.

- (d) (5.1.11.3) implies that ACFD is a parallelogram.
- (e) (5.1.11.3) implies AC = DF.
- (f) Obvious from the fact the ABCD, BEFC and ACFD are parallelograms.
- 5.1.12 ABCD is trapezium in which  $AB \parallel CD$  and AD = BC. Show that,
  - (a)  $\angle A = \angle B$
  - (b)  $\angle C = \angle D$
  - (c) Diagonal AC = Diagonal BD
  - (d)  $\triangle ABC = \triangle BAD$

### 5.2. Mid Point Theorem

5.2.1 ABCD is a quadrilateral in which P, Q, R and S are mid-points of the sides AB, BC,CD and DA (see Fig 5.2.1.1). AC is a diagonal.

Show that

- (a)  $SR \parallel AC$  and  $SR = \frac{1}{2}AC$
- (b) PQ = SR
- (c) PQRS is a parallelogram.

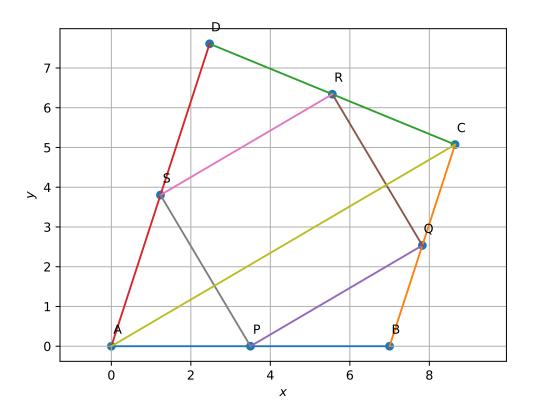


Figure 5.2.1.1:

Solution: Using (A.1.22.1),

$$\mathbf{P} = \frac{\mathbf{A} + \mathbf{B}}{2}$$

$$\mathbf{Q} = \frac{\mathbf{C} + \mathbf{B}}{2}$$

$$\mathbf{R} = \frac{\mathbf{C} + \mathbf{D}}{2}$$

$$\mathbf{S} = \frac{\mathbf{D} + \mathbf{A}}{2}$$
(5.2.1.1)

(a) Consequently,

$$\mathbf{R} - \mathbf{S} = \frac{\mathbf{C} - \mathbf{A}}{2} \tag{5.2.1.2}$$

$$\implies SR \parallel AC \tag{5.2.1.3}$$

Also,

$$\|\mathbf{R} - \mathbf{S}\| = \frac{\|\mathbf{C} - \mathbf{A}\|}{2} \tag{5.2.1.4}$$

$$\implies SR = \frac{1}{2}AC \tag{5.2.1.5}$$

(b) From (5.2.1.1),

$$\mathbf{R} - \mathbf{S} = \mathbf{Q} - \mathbf{P} \tag{5.2.1.6}$$

which means that PQRS is a parallelogram and PQ = SR.

5.2.2

5.2.3 ABCD is a rectangle and  $\mathbf{P}, \mathbf{Q}, \mathbf{R}$  and  $\mathbf{S}$  are mid-points of the sides AB, BC, CD and DA respectively. Show that the quadrilateral PQRS is a rhombus.



Figure 5.2.3.1:

**Solution:** From Problem 5.2.1, it is obvious that PQRS is a parallelogram. Further, from (5.2.1.1),

$$(\mathbf{P} - \mathbf{R})^{\mathsf{T}} (\mathbf{S} - \mathbf{Q}) = (\mathbf{A} + \mathbf{B} - \mathbf{C} - \mathbf{D})^{\mathsf{T}} (\mathbf{A} + \mathbf{D} - \mathbf{B} - \mathbf{C})$$
 (5.2.3.1)

$$= \mathbf{0} \tag{5.2.3.2}$$

since

$$(\mathbf{A} - \mathbf{D})^{\top} (\mathbf{A} - \mathbf{B}) = \mathbf{0}$$
 (5.2.3.3)

$$\|\mathbf{A} - \mathbf{D}\| = \|\mathbf{A} - \mathbf{B}\| \tag{5.2.3.4}$$

as ABCD is a rectangle. Thus, the diagonals PR and SQ bisect each other proving that PQRS is a rhombus.

5.2.4

5.2.5 In a parallelogram ABCD, **E** and **F** are the mid-points of sides AB and CD respectively (see Fig. 5.2.5.1) Show that the line segments AF and EC trisect the diagonal BD.

*Proof.* From the given information,

$$\mathbf{E} = \frac{\mathbf{A} + \mathbf{B}}{2} \tag{5.2.5.1}$$

$$\mathbf{F} = \frac{\mathbf{C} + \mathbf{D}}{2} \tag{5.2.5.2}$$

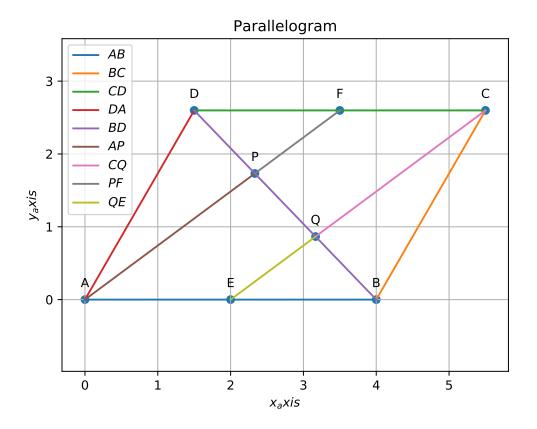


Figure 5.2.5.1:

Hence,

$$\mathbf{E} - \mathbf{C} = \frac{\mathbf{A} - \mathbf{C} + \mathbf{B} - \mathbf{C}}{2} \tag{5.2.5.3}$$

$$\mathbf{E} - \mathbf{C} = \frac{\mathbf{A} - \mathbf{C} + \mathbf{B} - \mathbf{C}}{2}$$

$$\mathbf{A} - \mathbf{F} = \frac{\mathbf{A} - \mathbf{C} + \mathbf{A} - \mathbf{D}}{2}$$
(5.2.5.4)

Since ABCD is a parallelogram,

$$\mathbf{B} - \mathbf{C} = \mathbf{A} - \mathbf{D} \tag{5.2.5.5}$$

$$\implies \mathbf{E} - \mathbf{C} = \mathbf{A} - \mathbf{F} \tag{5.2.5.6}$$

Thus,  $AF \parallel EC$ . From Appendix A.1.29, using the fact that **F** is the mid point of CD, we conclude that **P** is the mid point of DQ. Similarly, it can be shown that **Q** is the mid point of BP. 

5.2.6

- 5.2.7 ABC is a triangle right angled at C. A line through the mid-point M of hypotenuse AB and parallel to BC intersects AC at D (see Fig. 5.2.7.1). Show that
  - (a) D is the mid-point of AC
  - (b)  $MD \perp AC$
  - (c)  $CM = MA = \frac{1}{2}AB$

#### Solution:

- (a) Trivial from Appendix A.1.29.
- (b) Since ABC is right angled at C,

$$(\mathbf{C} - \mathbf{A})^{\mathsf{T}} (\mathbf{C} - \mathbf{B}) = 0 \tag{5.2.7.1}$$

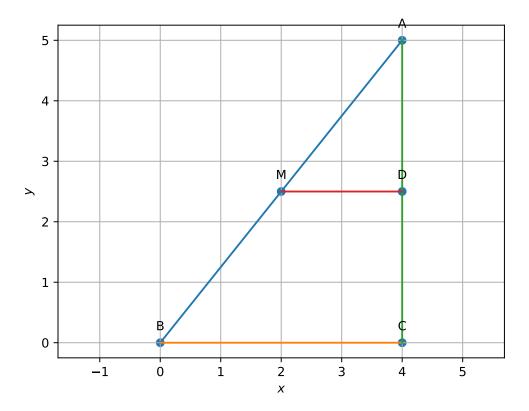


Figure 5.2.7.1:

Given that MD is parallel to BC, so

$$(\mathbf{C} - \mathbf{B}) = \lambda(\mathbf{M} - \mathbf{D}) \tag{5.2.7.2}$$

Substituting (5.2.7.2) in (5.2.7.1) and dividing by  $\lambda$ , we get

$$(\mathbf{C} - \mathbf{A})^{\top} (\mathbf{M} - \mathbf{D}) = 0 \tag{5.2.7.3}$$

From (5.2.7.3) it can be concluded that  $MD \perp AC$ .

(c) Since

$$\|\mathbf{C} - \mathbf{M}\|^2 - \|\mathbf{A} - \mathbf{M}\|^2 = \|\mathbf{C}\|^2 - \|\mathbf{A}\|^2 - 2(\mathbf{C} - \mathbf{A})^{\mathsf{T}}\mathbf{M}$$
 (5.2.7.4)

$$= (\mathbf{C} - \mathbf{A})^{\top} (\mathbf{C} + \mathbf{A} - 2\mathbf{M})$$
 (5.2.7.5)

$$= (\mathbf{C} - \mathbf{A})^{\top} (\mathbf{C} - \mathbf{B}) = \mathbf{0}$$
 (5.2.7.6)

upon substituting from Property 5.2.7a and (5.2.7.1). Thus, CM = AM.

### 5.3. Parallelograms

- 5.3.1 In the Figure 5.3.1.1, ABCD is a parallelogram,  $AE \perp DC$  and  $CF \perp AD$ . If AB = 16cm, AE = 8cm, and CF = 10cm, find AD.
- 5.3.2 If  $\mathbf{E}$ ,  $\mathbf{F}$ ,  $\mathbf{G}$  and  $\mathbf{H}$  are respectively the mid-points of the sides of a parallelogram ABCD, show that

$$ar(EFGH) = \frac{1}{2}ar(ABCD) \tag{5.3.2.1}$$

*Proof.* From Problem 5.2.1, EFGH is also a parallelogram and

$$\mathbf{E} - \mathbf{F} = \frac{\mathbf{A} - \mathbf{C}}{2} \tag{5.3.2.2}$$

$$\mathbf{E} - \mathbf{H} = \frac{\mathbf{A} - \mathbf{D}}{2} \tag{5.3.2.3}$$

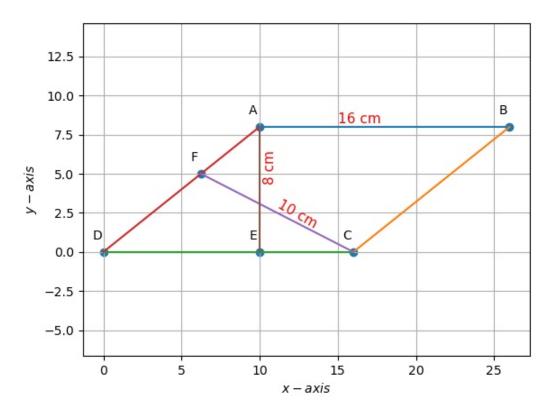


Figure 5.3.1.1:

Thus, the area off EFGH is obtained from (A.1.26.1) as

$$\|(\mathbf{E} - \mathbf{F}) \times (\mathbf{E} - \mathbf{H})\| = \frac{1}{4} \|(\mathbf{A} - \mathbf{C}) \times (\mathbf{B} - \mathbf{D})\|$$
 (5.3.2.4)

From Appendix A.1.24.1,

$$\mathbf{D} = \mathbf{C} - \mathbf{B} + \mathbf{A} \tag{5.3.2.5}$$

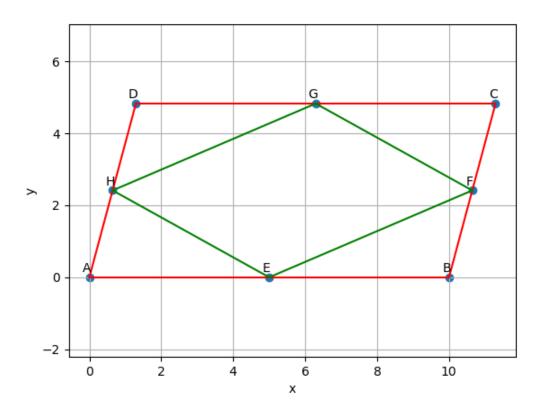


Figure 5.3.2.1:

which,

$$(\mathbf{A} - \mathbf{C}) \times (\mathbf{B} - \mathbf{D}) = (\mathbf{A} - \mathbf{C}) \times (2\mathbf{B} - \mathbf{C} - \mathbf{A})$$
 (5.3.2.6)

$$= 2\left(\mathbf{A} \times \mathbf{B} + \mathbf{B} \times \mathbf{C} + \mathbf{C} \times \mathbf{A}\right) \tag{5.3.2.7}$$

Substituting (5.3.2.7) in (5.3.2.4) yields

$$\|(\mathbf{E} - \mathbf{F}) \times (\mathbf{E} - \mathbf{H})\| = \frac{1}{2} \|\mathbf{A} \times \mathbf{B} + \mathbf{B} \times \mathbf{C} + \mathbf{C} \times \mathbf{A}\|$$
 (5.3.2.8)

The area of ABCD is

$$\|(\mathbf{A} - \mathbf{B}) \times (\mathbf{A} - \mathbf{D})\| = \|\mathbf{A} \times \mathbf{B} + \mathbf{B} \times \mathbf{C} + \mathbf{C} \times \mathbf{A}\|$$
 (5.3.2.9)

upon substituting from Appendix A.1.24.1 and simplifying. From (5.3.2.8) and (5.3.2.9) we obtain (5.3.2.1).

- 5.3.3
- 5.3.4 For a given Parallelogram ABCD, show that for any point **P** inside the parallelogram,
  - (a)  $Ar(APD) + Ar(PBC) = \frac{1}{2}Ar(ABCD)$
  - (b) Ar(APD) + Ar(PBC) = Ar(APB) + Ar(PCD)
- 5.3.5 In Fig.1, PQRS and ABRS are parallelograms and  $\mathbf{X}$  is any point on side BR. Show that
  - (a) ar(PQRS) = ar(ABRS)
  - (b)  $ar(AXS) = \frac{1}{2}ar(PQRS)$

*Proof.* (a) From Appendix A.1.24.1,

$$\mathbf{A} - \mathbf{B} = \mathbf{S} - \mathbf{R} = \mathbf{P} - \mathbf{Q} \tag{5.3.5.1}$$

and from Appendix A.1.26, using (5.3.5.1), we obtain Property 5.3.5a.

(b) Using section formula, let

$$\mathbf{X} = \frac{\mathbf{R} + k\mathbf{B}}{1 + k}.\tag{5.3.5.2}$$

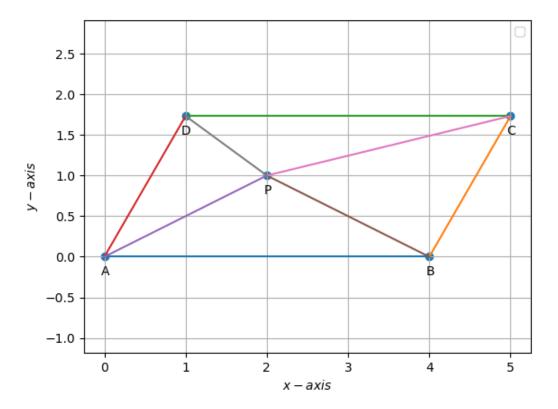


Figure 5.3.4.1:

Then,

$$ar(AXS) = \frac{1}{2} \|\mathbf{S} \times \mathbf{X} + \mathbf{X} \times \mathbf{A} + \mathbf{A} \times \mathbf{S}\|$$

$$= \frac{1}{2} \left\| \frac{\mathbf{S} \times \mathbf{R} + k\mathbf{S} \times \mathbf{B} + \mathbf{R} \times \mathbf{A} + k\mathbf{B} \times \mathbf{A}}{k+1} + \mathbf{A} \times \mathbf{S} \right\|$$
(5.3.5.4)

$$= \frac{1}{2} \left\| \frac{\mathbf{S} \times \mathbf{R} + k\mathbf{S} \times \mathbf{B} + \mathbf{R} \times \mathbf{A} + k\mathbf{B} \times \mathbf{A}}{k+1} + \mathbf{A} \times \mathbf{S} \right\|$$
(5.3.5.4)

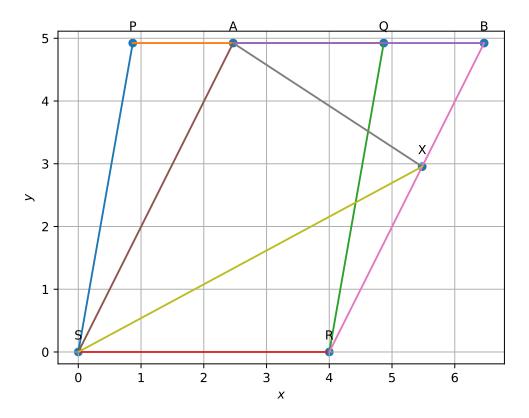


Figure 5.3.5.1:

Substituting for  $\mathbf{B}$  from (5.3.5.1) in the above,

$$ar(AXS) = \frac{1}{2} \left\| \frac{\mathbf{S} \times \mathbf{R} + \mathbf{R} \times \mathbf{A} + k(\mathbf{S} - \mathbf{A}) \times (\mathbf{A} - \mathbf{S} + \mathbf{R})}{k+1} + \mathbf{A} \times \mathbf{S} \right\|$$
(5.3.5.5)

$$= \frac{1}{2} \left\| \frac{\mathbf{S} \times \mathbf{R} + \mathbf{R} \times \mathbf{A} + k(\mathbf{S} - \mathbf{A}) \times \mathbf{R}}{k+1} + \mathbf{A} \times \mathbf{S} \right\|$$
 (5.3.5.6)

$$= \frac{1}{2} \| \mathbf{S} \times \mathbf{R} + \mathbf{R} \times \mathbf{A} + \mathbf{A} \times \mathbf{S} \|$$
 (5.3.5.7)

$$=\frac{1}{2}ar\left(ABRS\right)\tag{5.3.5.8}$$

5.4. Triangles and Parallelograms

5.4.1

5.4.2

5.4.3 In Fig.  $5.4.3.1 \; ABCD, DCFE$  and ABFE are parallelograms. Show that

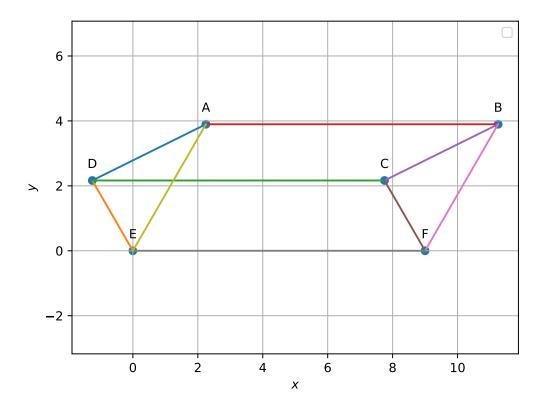


Figure 5.4.3.1:

$$ar(ADE) = ar(BCF) (5.4.3.1)$$

*Proof.* From the given information and Appendix A.1.24.1,

$$\mathbf{B} - \mathbf{A} = \mathbf{C} - \mathbf{D} \tag{5.4.3.2}$$

$$\mathbf{C} - \mathbf{D} = \mathbf{F} - \mathbf{E} \tag{5.4.3.3}$$

$$\mathbf{B} - \mathbf{A} = \mathbf{F} - \mathbf{E} \tag{5.4.3.4}$$

Thus, from Appendix A.1.26,

$$ar(ADE) = \|(\mathbf{D} - \mathbf{E}) \times (\mathbf{D} - \mathbf{A})\|$$
 (5.4.3.5)

$$= \|(\mathbf{C} - \mathbf{F}) \times (\mathbf{C} - \mathbf{B})\| \tag{5.4.3.6}$$

$$= ar(ADE) (5.4.3.7)$$

upon substituting from (5.4.3.2) and (5.4.3.3).

5.4.4 In figure below, ABCD is a parallelogram and BC is produced to a point  $\mathbf{Q}$  such that AD = CQ. If AQ intersect DC at  $\mathbf{P}$ , show that

$$ar(BPC) = ar(DPQ). (5.4.4.1)$$

5.4.5 In Fig. 5.4.5.1, ABC and BDE are two equilateral triangles such that **D** is the mid-

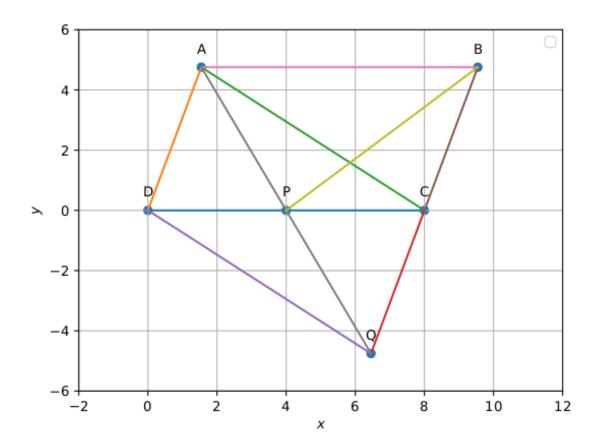


Figure 5.4.4.1:

point of BC. If AE intersects BC at  $\mathbf{F}$ , show that

$$ar(BDE) = \frac{1}{4}ar(ABC) \tag{5.4.5.1}$$

$$ar(BDE) = \frac{1}{2}ar(BAE) \tag{5.4.5.2}$$

$$ar(ABC) = 2ar(BEC) (5.4.5.3)$$

$$ar(BFE) = ar(AFD)$$
 (5.4.5.4)

$$ar(BFE) = 2ar(FED) \tag{5.4.5.5}$$

$$ar(FED) = \frac{1}{8}ar(AFC) \tag{5.4.5.6}$$

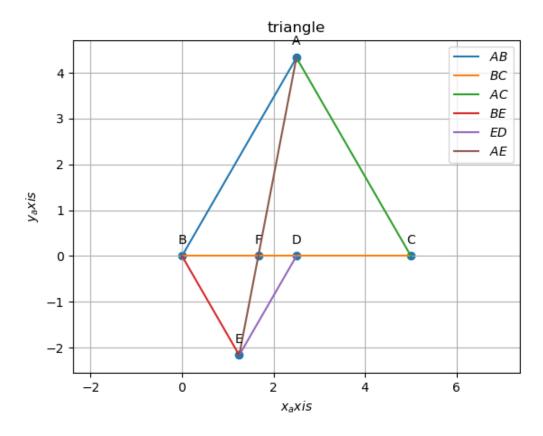


Figure 5.4.5.1:

5.4.6

5.4.7

5.4.8

### Chapter 6

## Circle Construction

# 6.1. Equal Chords

6.1.1 Two circles of radii 5cm and 3cm intersect at two points and the distance between their center is 4cm. Find the length of the common chord.

Solution: See Fig. 6.1.1.1. and

Parameter	Value	Description
$\mathbf{c}_1$	0	Center of Circle 1
$\mathbf{c}_2$	$4\mathbf{e}_1$	Center of Circle 2
$r_1$	5	Radius of Circle 1
$r_2$	3	Radius of Circle 2

Table 6.1.1.2:

From Table 6.1.1.2, (D.2.1.1) and (D.2.2.1), the equations of the two circles are

$$\|\mathbf{x}\|^2 - 25 = 0$$
 (6.1.1.1)  $\|\mathbf{x}\|^2 - 8\mathbf{e}_1^{\mathsf{T}}\mathbf{x} + 7 = 0$ 

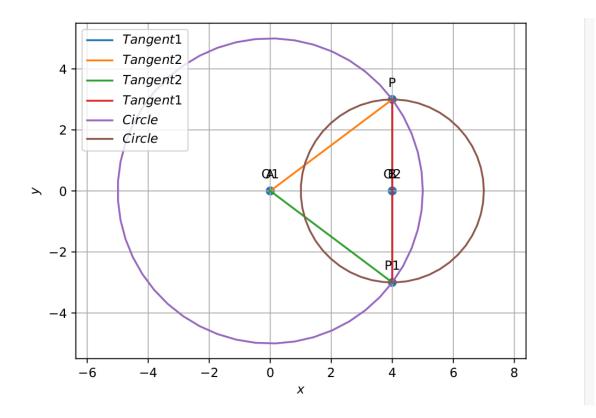


Figure 6.1.1.1:

From (6.1.1.1) and (D.2.4.1) the equation of the common chord is

$$\mathbf{e}_1^{\mathsf{T}}\mathbf{x} = 4 \tag{6.1.1.2}$$

It is easy to verify that

$$\mathbf{q} = 4\mathbf{e}_1 \tag{6.1.1.3}$$

is a point on (6.1.1.2). Substituting

$$\mathbf{m} = \mathbf{e}_2, \mathbf{q} = 4\mathbf{e}_1, \mathbf{V} = \mathbf{I}, \mathbf{u} = \mathbf{0}, f = -25$$
 (6.1.1.4)

in (F.3.3.1), the length of the chord in (F.3.1.1) is given by

$$\frac{2\sqrt{\left[\mathbf{e}_{2}^{\top}\left(4\mathbf{e}_{1}\right)\right]^{2}-\left(16\mathbf{e}_{1}^{\top}\mathbf{e}_{1}-25\right)\left(\mathbf{e}_{2}^{\top}\mathbf{e}_{2}\right)}}{\mathbf{e}_{2}^{\top}\mathbf{e}_{2}}\left\|\mathbf{e}_{2}\right\|=6\tag{6.1.1.5}$$

- 6.1.2
- 6.1.3
- 6.1.4
- 6.1.5
- 6.1.6

### 6.2. Inscribed Polygons

6.2.1 In Fig. 6.2.1.1,  $\mathbf{A}, \mathbf{B}$  and  $\mathbf{C}$  are three points with centre  $\mathbf{O}$  such that  $\angle BOC = 30^{\circ}$  and  $\angle AOB = 60^{\circ}$ . If  $\mathbf{D}$  is a point on the circle other than the arc ABC, find  $\angle ADC$ .

**Solution:** See Fig. (6.2.1.1).

$$\mathbf{A} = \mathbf{e}_2, \mathbf{B} = \begin{pmatrix} \cos 30 \\ \sin 30 \end{pmatrix}, \mathbf{C} = \mathbf{e}_1 \text{ and } \mathbf{D} = \begin{pmatrix} \cos \theta \\ \sin \theta \end{pmatrix}.$$
 (6.2.1.1)

6.2.2

6.2.3 Let  $\angle PQR = 100^{\circ}$  where **PQ**, **R** are points on a circle with centre **O**. Find  $\angle OPR$ . Solution: In Fig. 6.2.3.1,

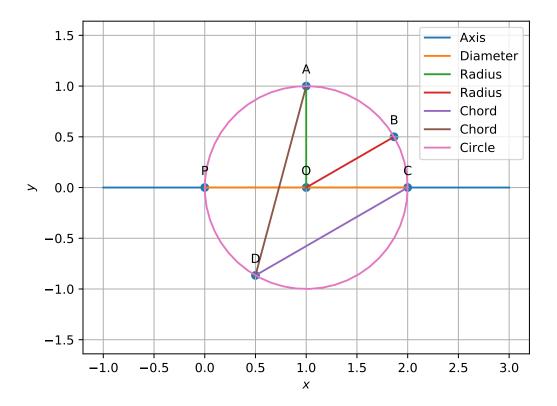


Figure 6.2.1.1:

$$\mathbf{P} = \begin{pmatrix} \cos(\theta + 160) \\ \sin(\theta + 160) \end{pmatrix}, \mathbf{Q} = \begin{pmatrix} \cos\alpha \\ \sin\alpha \end{pmatrix}, \mathbf{R} = \begin{pmatrix} \cos\theta \\ \sin\theta \end{pmatrix}. \tag{6.2.3.1}$$

# 6.3. Tangent to a Circle

6.3.1

6.3.2 Draw a circle and two lines parallel to a given line such that one is a tangent and the other is a secant to the circle

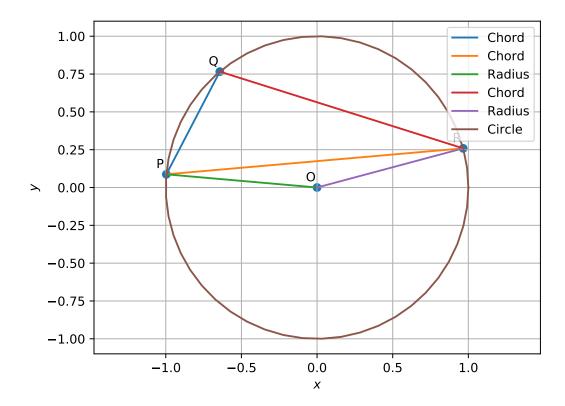


Figure 6.2.3.1:

Solution: The parameters of the circle in Fig. 6.3.2.1 are

$$\mathbf{u} = \mathbf{0}, f = -16 \tag{6.3.2.1}$$

Considering the given line to be

$$\mathbf{e}_1^{\mathsf{T}}\mathbf{x} = 5 \tag{6.3.2.2}$$

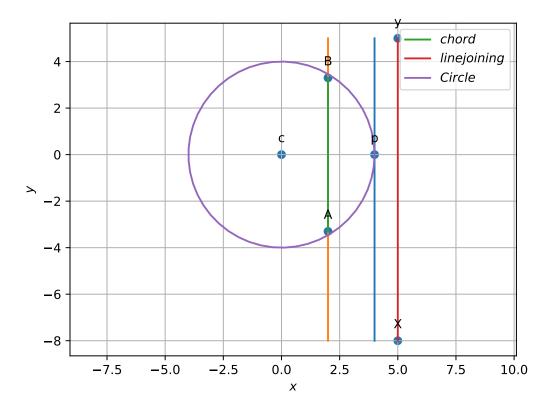


Figure 6.3.2.1:

the tangent to the circle will be

$$\mathbf{e}_1^{\mathsf{T}}\mathbf{x} = 4 \tag{6.3.2.3}$$

and the secant will be

$$\mathbf{e}_1^{\mathsf{T}}\mathbf{x} = c \tag{6.3.2.4}$$

where

$$|c| < 4 \tag{6.3.2.5}$$

# 6.4. Tangents from a Point

6.4.1

6.4.2

6.4.3

6.4.4 Show that the tangents of circle drawn at the ends of diameter are parallel.

**Solution:** See Fig. 6.4.4.1. Let **A**, **B** be the end points of the diameter of the circle through which the tangents are drawn. From (D.2.2.1),

$$\frac{\mathbf{A} + \mathbf{B}}{2} = -\mathbf{u} \tag{6.4.4.1}$$

$$\implies \mathbf{A} + \mathbf{B} = -2\mathbf{u} \tag{6.4.4.2}$$

From (F.3.2.1),

$$\mathbf{m}_{1}^{\top} \left( \mathbf{A} + \mathbf{u} \right) = 0 \tag{6.4.4.3}$$

$$\mathbf{m}_{2}^{\top} \left( \mathbf{B} + \mathbf{u} \right) = 0 \tag{6.4.4.4}$$

where  $m_1, m_2$  are the direction vectors of the tangents at A, B respectively. Then,

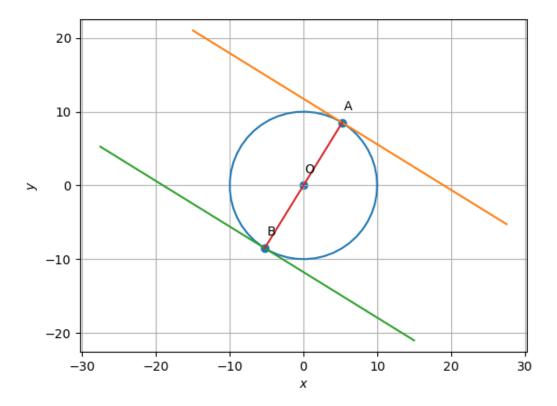


Figure 6.4.4.1:

the normal vectors at the point of contact of tangets are

$$\mathbf{A} + \mathbf{u} = k_1 \mathbf{n_1} \tag{6.4.4.5}$$

$$\mathbf{B} + \mathbf{u} = k_2 \mathbf{n_2} \tag{6.4.4.6}$$

Adding (6.4.4.5) and (6.4.4.6),

$$k_1 \mathbf{n_1} + k_2 \mathbf{n_2} = \mathbf{A} + \mathbf{B} + 2\mathbf{u}$$
 (6.4.4.7)

$$= \mathbf{0} \tag{6.4.4.8}$$

from (6.4.4.2), (6.4.4.8) can be expressed as

$$k_1 \mathbf{n_1} + k_2 \mathbf{n_2} = 0 \tag{6.4.4.9}$$

$$k_1 \mathbf{n_1} = -k_2 \mathbf{n_2} \tag{6.4.4.10}$$

Since

$$\mathbf{n_1} \times \mathbf{n_2} = \mathbf{0},\tag{6.4.4.11}$$

$$\mathbf{n_1} \parallel \mathbf{n_2} \implies \mathbf{m_1} \parallel \mathbf{m_2} \tag{6.4.4.12}$$

6.4.5

6.4.6 The length of a tangent from a point **A** at distance 5 cm from the centre of the circle is 4 cm. Find the radius of the circle.

Solution: From the Baudhayana theorem, the radius

$$r = 3$$
 (6.4.6.1)

Let

$$\mathbf{A} = \mathbf{O} \text{ and } \mathbf{O} = \begin{pmatrix} 5 \\ 0 \end{pmatrix} \tag{6.4.6.2}$$

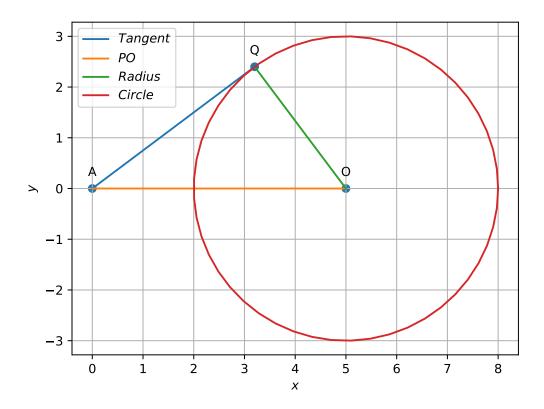


Figure 6.4.6.1:

The equation of the circle can then be expressed as

$$\|\mathbf{x}\|^2 + 2\mathbf{u}^\top \mathbf{x} + f = 0 \tag{6.4.6.3}$$

where

$$\mathbf{u} = -\mathbf{O} = -\begin{pmatrix} 5\\0 \end{pmatrix} \tag{6.4.6.4}$$

$$f = \|\mathbf{u}\|^2 - r^2 = 16 \tag{6.4.6.5}$$

From (F.4.9.2),

$$\Sigma = (\mathbf{A} + \mathbf{u}) (\mathbf{A} + \mathbf{u})^{\top} - (\mathbf{A}^{\top} \mathbf{A} + 2\mathbf{u}^{\top} \mathbf{A} + f) \mathbf{I}$$
 (6.4.6.6)

$$= \begin{pmatrix} 9 & 0 \\ 0 & -16 \end{pmatrix} \tag{6.4.6.7}$$

Thus, from (F.4.9.1),

$$\mathbf{P} = \mathbf{I}, \lambda_1 = 9, \lambda_2 = -16 \tag{6.4.6.8}$$

$$\implies$$
  $\mathbf{n}_1 = \begin{pmatrix} 3 \\ 4 \end{pmatrix}$  and  $\mathbf{n}_2 = \begin{pmatrix} 3 \\ -4 \end{pmatrix}$  (6.4.6.9)

Substituting from the above in (F.4.6.1),

$$\mathbf{q}_{22} = \frac{1}{5} \begin{pmatrix} 16\\12 \end{pmatrix} = \mathbf{Q} \tag{6.4.6.10}$$

in Fig. 6.4.6.1.

6.4.7 Two concentric circles are of radii 5cm and 3cm. Find the length of the chord of the larger circle which touches the smaller circle.

Solution: See Fig. 6.4.7.1. Let

$$\mathbf{O} = \mathbf{0} \tag{6.4.7.1}$$

$$r_1 = 5, r_2 = 3. (6.4.7.2)$$

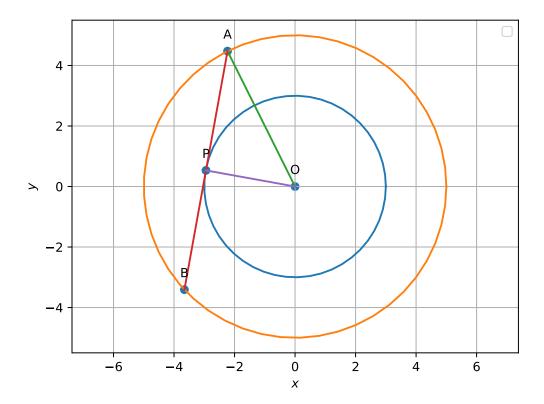


Figure 6.4.7.1:

Choosing

$$\mathbf{A} = r_1 \begin{pmatrix} \cos \theta \\ \sin \theta \end{pmatrix}, \tag{6.4.7.3}$$

 ${f P}$  can be obtained following the approach in Problem 6.4.7. From Appendix D.2.5,  ${f P}$  is the mid point of AB. This can be used to obtain  ${f B}$ .

6.4.8 A quadrilateral ABCD is drawn to circumscribe a circle. Show that AB+CD is equal to BC+AD

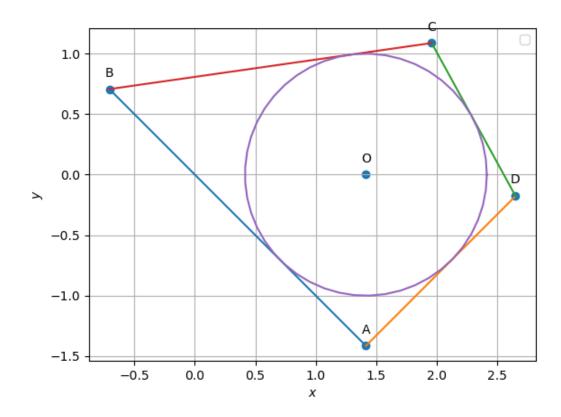


Figure 6.4.8.1:

#### Solution:

- (a) Draw the circle.
- (b) Choose the point **A**.
- (c) Draw the tangents from **A** to the circle.
- (d) Choose points  $\mathbf{B}, \mathbf{D}$  on the tangents.
- (e) From  $\mathbf{B}, \mathbf{D}$ , draw tangents to the circle intersecting at  $\mathbf{C}$ .

6.4.9 In Fig. 6.4.9.1, XY and EF are two parallel tangents to a circle with centre  $\mathbf{O}$  and

another tangent AB with point of contact  ${\bf C}$  intersecting XY at  ${\bf A}$  and EF at  ${\bf B}$ . Prove that  $\angle AOB = 90^{\circ}$ .

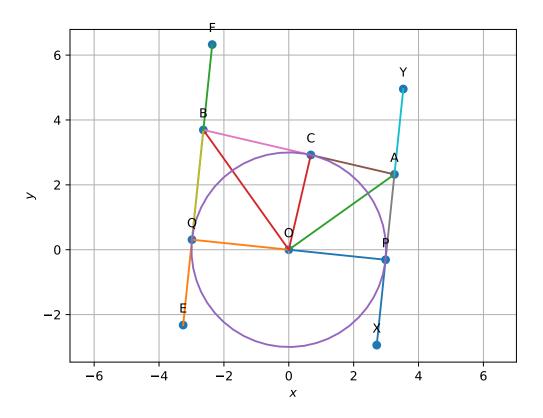


Figure 6.4.9.1:

#### **Solution:**

6.4.10 Prove that the angle between the two tangents drawn from an external point to a circle is supplementary to the angle subtended by the line-segment joining the points of contact at the centre.

**Solution:** Follow the approach in Problem 6.4.6 for constructing the tangents to the circle.

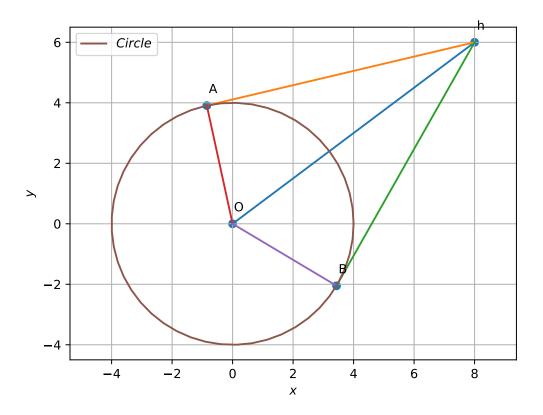


Figure 6.4.10.1:

#### 6.4.11

6.4.12 A triangle ABC is drawn to circumscribe a circle of radius 4cm such that the segments BD and DC into which BC is divided by the point of contact D are of lengths 8cm and 6cm respectively. Find the sides AB and AC.

#### 6.4.13

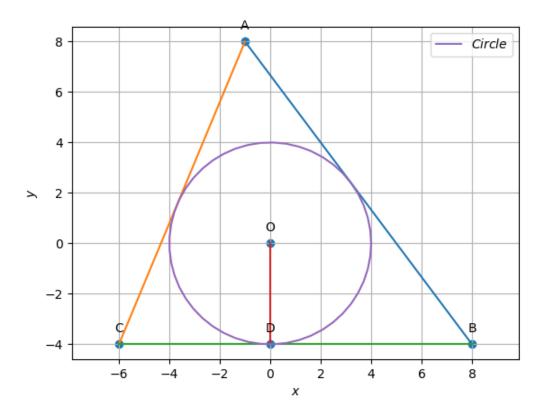


Figure 6.4.12.1:

### Chapter 7

# Conics

### 7.1. Parabola

## 7.2. Ellipse

## 7.3. Hyperbola

### 7.4. Miscellaneous

7.4.1

7.4.2 An arch is in the form of a parabola with its axis vertical. The arch is 10m high and 5m wide at the base. How wide is it 2m from the vertex of the parabola?

#### **Solution:**

7.4.3

7.4.4 An arch is in the form of a semi-ellipse. It is 8 m wide and 2 m high at the centre. Find the height of the arch at a point 1.5 m from one end.

#### Solution:

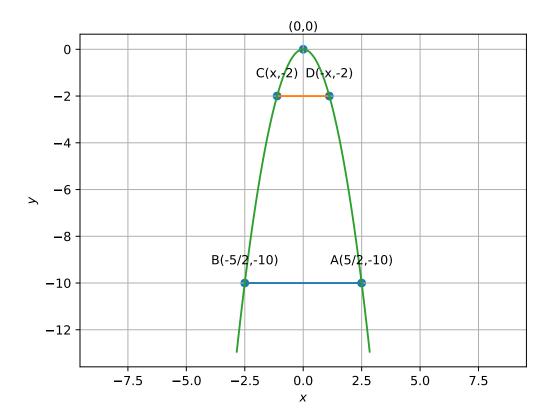


Figure 7.4.2.1:

7.4.5

7.4.6 Find the area of the triangle formed by the lines joining the vertex of the parabola  $x^2 = 12y$  to the ends of its latus rectum.

7.4.7

7.4.8 An equilateral triangle is inscribed in the parabola  $y^2 = 4ax$ , where one vertex is at the vertex of the parabola. Find the length of the side of the triangle.

#### **Solution:**

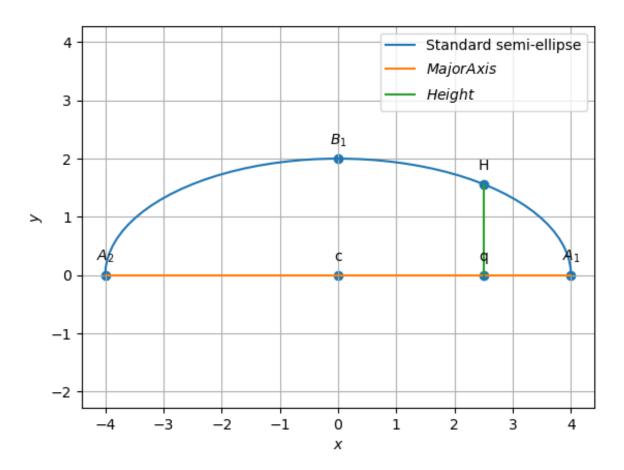


Figure 7.4.4.1:

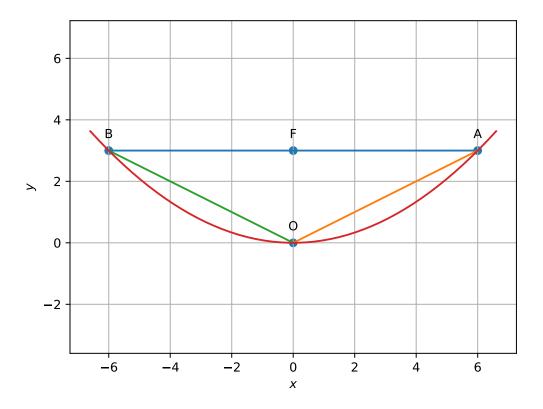


Figure 7.4.6.1:

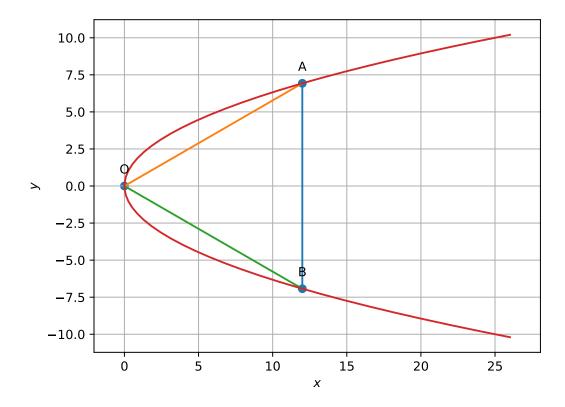


Figure 7.4.8.1:

### Chapter 8

## **Intersection of Conics**

#### 8.1. Chords

8.1.1 Find the area of the region bounded by the curve  $y^2 = x$  and the lines x = 1 and x = 4 and the axis in the first quadrant.

#### Solution:

The parameters of the conic are

$$\mathbf{V} = \begin{pmatrix} 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 \end{pmatrix}, \mathbf{u} = -\frac{1}{2} \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 0 \end{pmatrix}, f = 0$$
 (8.1.1.1)

For the line x - 1 = 0, the parameters are

$$\mathbf{q}_2 = \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 0 \end{pmatrix}, \mathbf{m}_2 = \begin{pmatrix} 0 \\ 1 \end{pmatrix} \tag{8.1.1.2}$$

Substituting from the above in (F.3.1.3),

$$\mu_i = 1, -1 \tag{8.1.1.3}$$

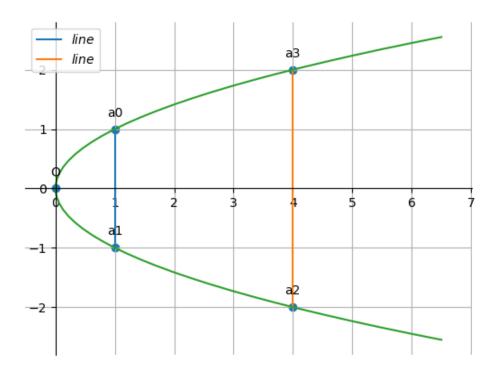


Figure 8.1.1.1:

yilelding the points of intersection

$$\mathbf{a}_0 = \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 1 \end{pmatrix}, \mathbf{a}_1 = \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ -1 \end{pmatrix} \tag{8.1.1.4}$$

Similarly, for the line x - 4 = 0

$$\mathbf{q_1} = \begin{pmatrix} 4 \\ 0 \end{pmatrix}, \mathbf{m_1} = \begin{pmatrix} 0 \\ 1 \end{pmatrix} \tag{8.1.1.5}$$

yielding

$$\mu_i = 2, -2 \tag{8.1.1.6}$$

from which, the points of intersection are

$$\mathbf{a_3} = \begin{pmatrix} 4 \\ 2 \end{pmatrix}, \mathbf{a_2} = \begin{pmatrix} 4 \\ -2 \end{pmatrix} \tag{8.1.1.7}$$

Thus, the area of the parabola in between the lines x = 1 and x = 4 is given by

$$\int_0^4 \sqrt{x} \, dx - \int_0^1 \sqrt{x} \, dx = 14/3 \tag{8.1.1.8}$$

8.1.2 Find the area of the region bounded by the curve  $y^2 = 9x$  and the lines x = 2 and x = 4 and the axis in the first quadrant.

**Solution:** The parameters of the conic are

$$\mathbf{V} = \begin{pmatrix} 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 \end{pmatrix}, \mathbf{u} = \frac{9}{2} \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 0 \end{pmatrix}, f = 0. \tag{8.1.2.1}$$

The parameters of the line x - 2 = 0 are

$$\mathbf{q_2} = \begin{pmatrix} 2 \\ 0 \end{pmatrix}, \mathbf{m_2} = \begin{pmatrix} 0 \\ 1 \end{pmatrix} \tag{8.1.2.2}$$

Substituting in (F.3.1.3),

$$\mu_i = \pm 3\sqrt{2} \tag{8.1.2.3}$$

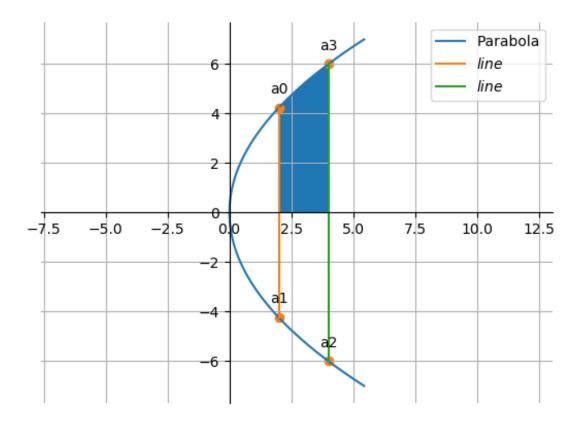


Figure 8.1.2.1:

yielding

$$\mathbf{a_0} = \begin{pmatrix} 2 \\ 3\sqrt{2} \end{pmatrix}, \mathbf{a_1} = \begin{pmatrix} 2 \\ -3\sqrt{2} \end{pmatrix}. \tag{8.1.2.4}$$

Similarly, for the line x - 4 = 0,

$$\mathbf{q_1} = \begin{pmatrix} 4 \\ 0 \end{pmatrix}, \mathbf{m_1} = \begin{pmatrix} 0 \\ 1 \end{pmatrix} \tag{8.1.2.5}$$

yielding

$$\mu_i = \pm 6. \tag{8.1.2.6}$$

Thus,

$$\mathbf{a_3} = \begin{pmatrix} 4 \\ 6 \end{pmatrix}, \mathbf{a_2} = \begin{pmatrix} 4 \\ -6 \end{pmatrix} \tag{8.1.2.7}$$

and the desired area of the parabola is

$$\int_0^4 3\sqrt{x} \, dx - \int_0^2 3\sqrt{x} \, dx = 16 - 4\sqrt{2} \tag{8.1.2.8}$$

8.1.3

8.1.4 Find the area of the region in the first quadrant enclosed by the x-axis, line  $x = \sqrt{3}y$  and circle  $x^2 + y^2 = 4$ .

Solution: From the given information, the parameters of the circle and line are

$$f = -4, \mathbf{u} = \mathbf{0}, \mathbf{V} = \mathbf{I}, \mathbf{m} = \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ \sqrt{3} \end{pmatrix}, \mathbf{h} = \mathbf{0}$$
 (8.1.4.1)

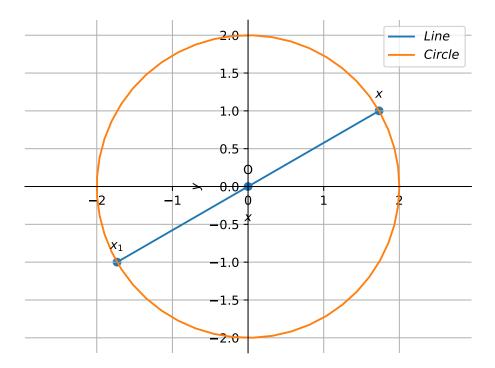


Figure 8.1.4.1:

Substituting the above parameters in (F.3.1.3),

$$\mu = \sqrt{3} \tag{8.1.4.2}$$

yielding the desired point of intersection as

$$\mathbf{x} = \begin{pmatrix} \sqrt{3} \\ 1 \end{pmatrix} \tag{8.1.4.3}$$

From (8.1.4.1), the angle between the given line and the x axis is

$$\theta = 30^{\circ} \tag{8.1.4.4}$$

and the area of the sector is

$$\frac{\theta}{360}\pi r^2 = \frac{\pi}{3} \tag{8.1.4.5}$$

8.1.5 Find the area of the smaller part of the circle  $x^2 + y^2 = a^2$  cut off by the line  $x = \frac{a}{\sqrt{2}}$ .

Solution: The given circle can be expressed as a conic with parameters

$$\mathbf{V} = \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 \end{pmatrix}, \mathbf{u} = 0, f = -a^2 \tag{8.1.5.1}$$

The given line parameters are

$$\mathbf{h} = \begin{pmatrix} \frac{a}{\sqrt{2}} \\ 0 \end{pmatrix}, \mathbf{m} = \mathbf{e}_2. \tag{8.1.5.2}$$

Substituting the above in (F.3.1.3),

$$\mu = \pm \frac{a}{\sqrt{2}} \tag{8.1.5.3}$$

yielding the points of intersection of the line with circle as

$$\mathbf{A} = \begin{pmatrix} \frac{a}{\sqrt{2}} \\ -\frac{a}{\sqrt{2}} \end{pmatrix}, \mathbf{B} = \begin{pmatrix} \frac{a}{\sqrt{2}} \\ \frac{a}{\sqrt{2}} \end{pmatrix}$$
(8.1.5.4)

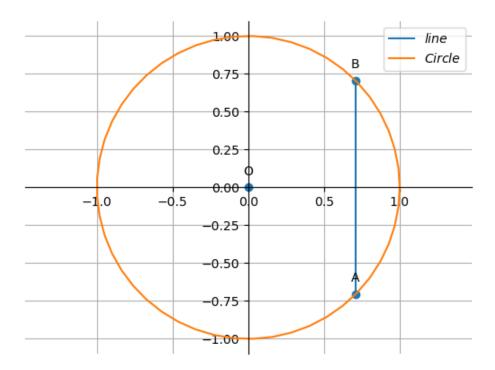


Figure 8.1.5.1:

From Fig. 8.1.5.1, the total area of the portion is given by

$$ar(APQ) = 2ar(APR) \tag{8.1.5.5}$$

$$=2\int_0^{\frac{a}{\sqrt{2}}}\sqrt{a^2-x^2}\,dx\tag{8.1.5.6}$$

$$=\frac{a^2}{2}\left(1+\frac{\pi}{2}\right) \tag{8.1.5.7}$$

8.1.6 The area between  $x = y^2$  and x = 4 is divided into two equal parts by the line x = a, find the value of a.

Solution: The given conic parameters are

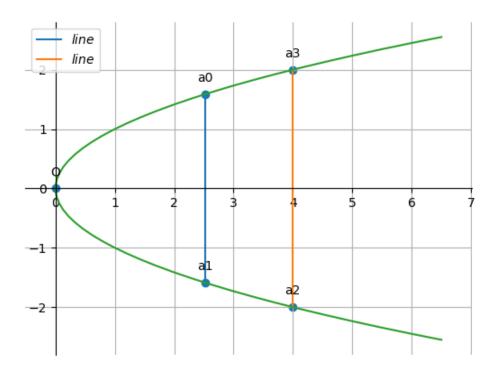


Figure 8.1.6.1:

$$\mathbf{V} = \begin{pmatrix} 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 \end{pmatrix}, \mathbf{u} = -\frac{1}{2}\mathbf{e}_1 f = 0 \tag{8.1.6.1}$$

The parameters of the lines are

$$\mathbf{q}_2 = \begin{pmatrix} a \\ 0 \end{pmatrix}, \mathbf{m}_2 = \mathbf{e}_2 \tag{8.1.6.2}$$

Substituting the above values in (F.3.1.3),

$$\mu_i = a, -a \tag{8.1.6.3}$$

yielding the points of intersection as

$$\mathbf{a_0} = \begin{pmatrix} a \\ a \end{pmatrix}, \mathbf{a_1} = \begin{pmatrix} a \\ -a \end{pmatrix} \tag{8.1.6.4}$$

Similarly, for the line x - 4 = 0,

$$\mathbf{q_1} = \begin{pmatrix} 4 \\ 0 \end{pmatrix}, \mathbf{m_1} = \mathbf{e}_2 \tag{8.1.6.5}$$

yielding

$$\mu_i = 2, -2 \tag{8.1.6.6}$$

and

$$\mathbf{a}_3 = \begin{pmatrix} 4 \\ 2 \end{pmatrix}, \mathbf{a}_2 = \begin{pmatrix} 4 \\ -2 \end{pmatrix}. \tag{8.1.6.7}$$

Area between parabola and the line x = 4 is divided equally by the line x = a. Thus,

$$A_1 = \int_0^a \sqrt{x} \, dx \tag{8.1.6.8}$$

$$A_2 = \int_a^4 \sqrt{x} \, dx \tag{8.1.6.9}$$

and 
$$A_1 = A_2$$
 (8.1.6.10)

$$\implies a = 4^{\frac{2}{3}} \tag{8.1.6.11}$$

- 8.1.7 Find the area of the region bounded by the parabola  $y = x^2$  and y = |x|. Solution:
- 8.1.8 Find the area bounded by the curve  $x^2 = 4y$  and the line x = 4y 2.

**Solution:** The given curve can be expressed as a conic with parameters

$$\mathbf{V} = \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 \end{pmatrix}, \mathbf{u} = \begin{pmatrix} 0 \\ -2 \end{pmatrix}, f = 0 \tag{8.1.8.1}$$

The parameters of the given line are

$$\mathbf{q} = \begin{pmatrix} -2\\0 \end{pmatrix}, \mathbf{m} = \begin{pmatrix} 4\\1 \end{pmatrix} \tag{8.1.8.2}$$

The points of intersection can then be obtained from (F.3.1.3) as

$$\therefore \mathbf{x}_1 = \begin{pmatrix} 2 \\ 1 \end{pmatrix}, \mathbf{x}_2 = \begin{pmatrix} -1 \\ \frac{1}{4} \end{pmatrix} \tag{8.1.8.3}$$

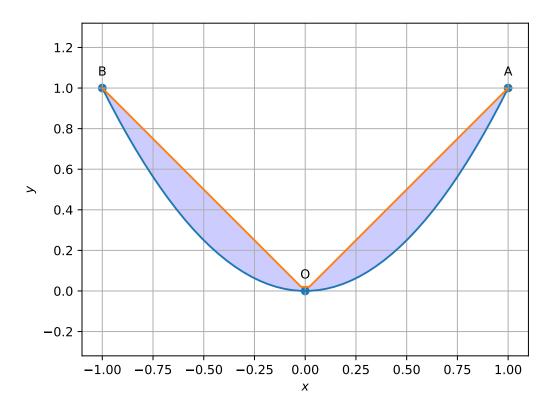


Figure 8.1.7.1:

The desired area is then obtained as

$$A = \int_{x_2}^{x_1} [f(x) - g(x)] dx$$
 (8.1.8.4)

$$A = \int_{x_2}^{x_1} [f(x) - g(x)] dx$$

$$= \int_{-1}^{2} \left(\frac{x+2}{4} - \frac{x^2}{4}\right) dx$$
(8.1.8.5)

$$= \frac{9}{8} \tag{8.1.8.6}$$

8.1.9

8.1.10

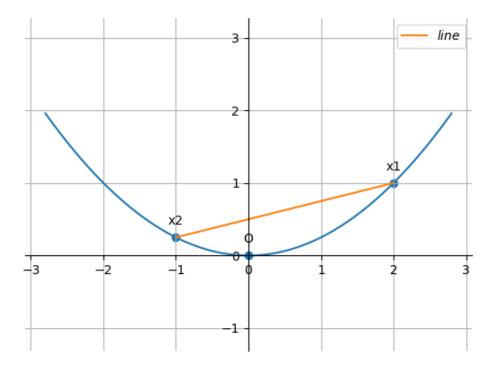


Figure 8.1.8.1:

8.1.11

### 8.2. Curves

8.2.1 Find the area of the circle  $4x^2 + 4y^2 = 9$  which is interior to the parabola  $x^2 = 4y$ .

 $\textbf{Solution:} \ \ \text{The given circle and parabola can be expressed as conics with parameters}$ 

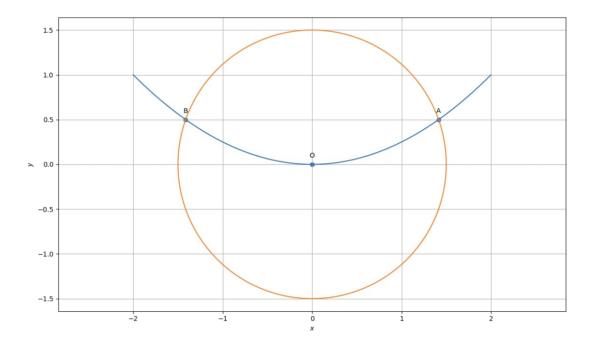


Figure 8.2.1.1:

$$\mathbf{V}_1 = 4\mathbf{I}, \mathbf{u_1} = \mathbf{0}, f_1 = -9$$
 (8.2.1.1)

$$\mathbf{V}_2 = \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 \end{pmatrix}, \mathbf{u_2} = -\begin{pmatrix} 0 \\ 2 \end{pmatrix}, f_2 = 0 \tag{8.2.1.2}$$

The intersection of the given conics is obtained as

$$\mathbf{x}^{\top} (\mathbf{V}_1 + \mu \mathbf{V}_2) \mathbf{x} + 2 (\mathbf{u}_1 + \mu \mathbf{u}_2)^{\top} \mathbf{x} + (f_1 + \mu f_2) = 0$$
 (8.2.1.3)

This conic represents a pair of straight lines if

$$\begin{vmatrix} \mathbf{V}_1 + \mu \mathbf{V}_2 & \mathbf{u}_1 + \mu \mathbf{u}_2 \\ (\mathbf{u}_1 + \mu \mathbf{u}_2)^\top & f_1 + \mu f_2 \end{vmatrix} = 0$$
(8.2.1.4)

which can be expressed as

$$\implies \begin{vmatrix} \mu + 4 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 4 & -2\mu \\ 0 & -2\mu & -9 \end{vmatrix} = 0$$
 (8.2.1.5)

Solving the above equation we get,

$$\mu^3 + 4\mu^2 + 9\mu + 36 = 0 (8.2.1.6)$$

yielding

$$\mu = -4. \tag{8.2.1.7}$$

Thus, the parameters for the pair of straight lines can be expressed as

$$\mathbf{V} = \mathbf{V}_1 + \mu \mathbf{V}_2 = \begin{pmatrix} 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 4 \end{pmatrix}, \tag{8.2.1.8}$$

$$\mathbf{u} = \mathbf{u}_1 + \mu \mathbf{u}_2 = \begin{pmatrix} 0 \\ 8 \end{pmatrix} \tag{8.2.1.9}$$

$$f = -9, (8.2.1.10)$$

$$\implies \mathbf{D} = \mathbf{V}, \mathbf{P} = \mathbf{I} \tag{8.2.1.11}$$

8.2.2

8.2.3 Find the area of the region bounded by the curves  $y = x^2 + 2$ , y = x, x = 0 and x = 3.

**Solution:** The conic parameters are

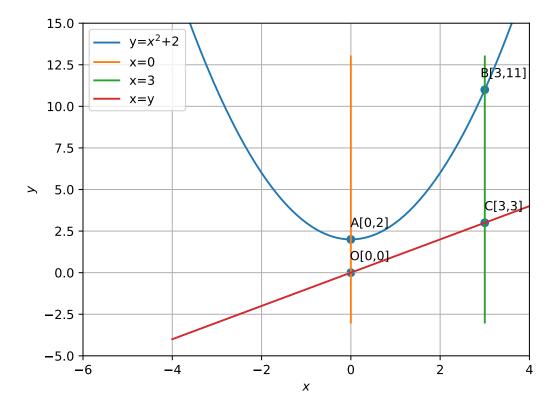


Figure 8.2.3.1:

$$\mathbf{V} = \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 \end{pmatrix}, \mathbf{u} = \begin{pmatrix} 0 \\ -1/2 \end{pmatrix}, f = 2. \tag{8.2.3.1}$$

8.2.4

8.2.5

8.2.6 Find the smaller area enclosed by the circle  $x^2 + y^2 = 4$  and the line x + y = 2.

Solution: The given circle can be expressed as conics with parameters,

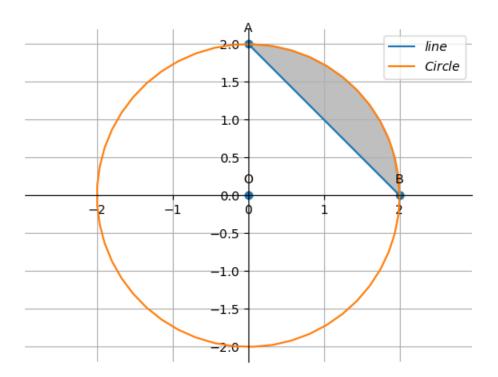


Figure 8.2.6.1:

$$\mathbf{V} = \begin{pmatrix} 4 & 0 \\ 0 & 4 \end{pmatrix}, \mathbf{u} = 0, f = -16 \tag{8.2.6.1}$$

The line parameters are

$$\mathbf{h} = \begin{pmatrix} 2 \\ 0 \end{pmatrix}, \mathbf{m} = \begin{pmatrix} \frac{1}{2} \\ -\frac{1}{2} \end{pmatrix} \tag{8.2.6.2}$$

Substituting the parameters in (F.3.1.3),

$$\mu = 0, -4 \tag{8.2.6.3}$$

yielding the points of intersection as

$$\mathbf{A} = \begin{pmatrix} 0 \\ 2 \end{pmatrix}, \mathbf{B} = \begin{pmatrix} 2 \\ 0 \end{pmatrix} \tag{8.2.6.4}$$

From Fig. 8.2.6.1, the desired area is

$$\int_0^2 \sqrt{4 - x^2} \, dx - \int_0^2 (2 - x) \, dx = \pi - 2 \tag{8.2.6.5}$$

8.2.7

#### 8.3. Miscellaneous

8.3.1

8.3.2 Find the area between the curves y = x and  $y = x^2$ .

Solution: The given curve can be expressed as a conic with parameters

$$\mathbf{V} = \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 \end{pmatrix}, \mathbf{u} = \begin{pmatrix} 0 \\ -\frac{1}{2} \end{pmatrix}, f = 0 \tag{8.3.2.1}$$

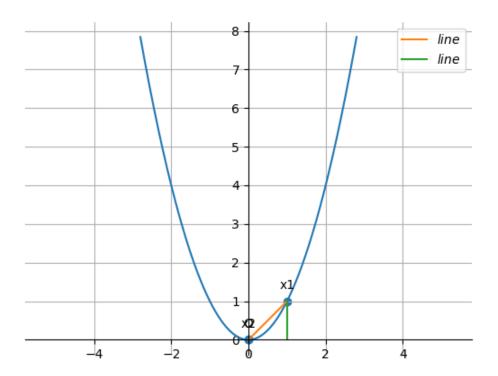


Figure 8.3.2.1:

The given line parameters are

$$\mathbf{h} = \begin{pmatrix} 0 \\ 0 \end{pmatrix}, \mathbf{m} = \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 1 \end{pmatrix} \tag{8.3.2.2}$$

Substituting the given parameters in (F.3.1.3),

$$\mathbf{x_1} = \begin{pmatrix} 0 \\ 0 \end{pmatrix}, \mathbf{x_2} = \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 1 \end{pmatrix}. \tag{8.3.2.3}$$

From Fig. 8.3.2.1, the area bounded by the curve  $y = x^2$  and line y = x is given by

$$\int_0^1 \left( x - \frac{x^2}{2} \right) \, dx = \frac{1}{6} \tag{8.3.2.4}$$

8.3.3 Find the area of the region bounded by the curve  $x^2 = 4y$  and the lines y=2 and y=4 and the y-axis in the first quadrant.

**Solution:** The conic parameters are

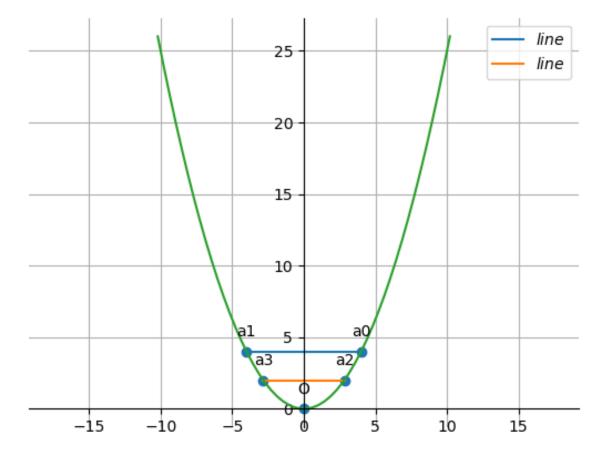


Figure 8.3.3.1:

$$\mathbf{V} = \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 \end{pmatrix}, \mathbf{u} = \begin{pmatrix} 0 \\ -2 \end{pmatrix}, f = 0 \tag{8.3.3.1}$$

The vector parameters of y-4=0 are

$$\mathbf{h}_1 = \begin{pmatrix} 0 \\ 4 \end{pmatrix}, \mathbf{m}_1 = \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 0 \end{pmatrix} \tag{8.3.3.2}$$

Substituting the above in (F.3.1.3),

$$\mu_i = 4, -4 \tag{8.3.3.3}$$

yielding the points of intersection with the parabola as

$$\mathbf{a}_0 = \begin{pmatrix} 4 \\ 4 \end{pmatrix}, \mathbf{a}_1 = \begin{pmatrix} -4 \\ 4 \end{pmatrix} \tag{8.3.3.4}$$

Similarly, for the line y-2=0, the vector parameters are

$$\mathbf{h}_2 = \begin{pmatrix} 0 \\ 2 \end{pmatrix}, \mathbf{m}_2 = \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 0 \end{pmatrix} \tag{8.3.3.5}$$

yielding

$$\mu_i = 2.8, -2.8 \tag{8.3.3.6}$$

and the points of intersection

$$\mathbf{a}_2 = \begin{pmatrix} 2.8\\2 \end{pmatrix}, \mathbf{a}_3 = \begin{pmatrix} -2.8\\2 \end{pmatrix}$$
 (8.3.3.7)

From Fig. 8.3.3.1, the area of the parabola between the lines y=2 and y=4 is given by

$$\int_0^4 2\sqrt{y} \, dy - \int_0^2 2\sqrt{y} \, dy = 6.895 \tag{8.3.3.8}$$

8.3.4

8.3.5

8.3.6

8.3.7 Find the area enclosed by the parabola  $4y = 3x^2$  and the line 2y = 3x + 12.

**Solution:** The parameters of the given conic are

$$\mathbf{V} = \begin{pmatrix} 3 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 \end{pmatrix}, \mathbf{u} = \begin{pmatrix} 0 \\ -2 \end{pmatrix}, f = 0. \tag{8.3.7.1}$$

For the line, the parameters are

$$\mathbf{h} = \begin{pmatrix} -2\\3 \end{pmatrix}, \mathbf{m} = \begin{pmatrix} 2\\3 \end{pmatrix} \tag{8.3.7.2}$$

yielding

$$\mu = -2.5, 2.7 \tag{8.3.7.3}$$

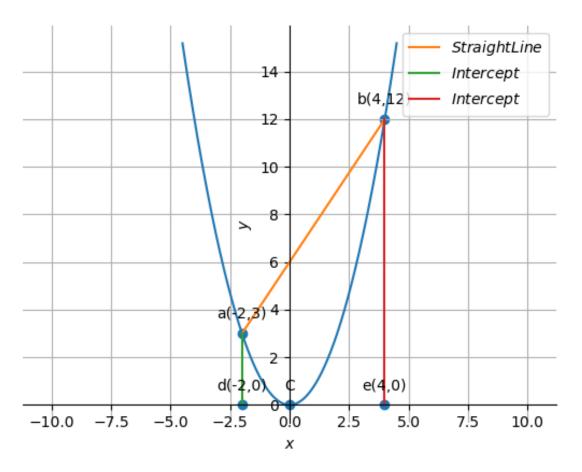


Figure 8.3.7.1:

upon substitution in (F.3.1.3) resulting in the points of intersection

$$\mathbf{A} = \begin{pmatrix} -2\\3 \end{pmatrix}, \mathbf{B} = \begin{pmatrix} 4\\12 \end{pmatrix}. \tag{8.3.7.4}$$

From Fig. 8.3.7.1, the desired area is

$$\int_{-2}^{4} \frac{3x+12}{2} dx - \int_{-2}^{4} \frac{3x^2}{4} dx = 27$$
 (8.3.7.5)

8.3.8 Find the area of the smaller region bounded by the ellipse  $\frac{x^2}{9} + \frac{y^2}{4} = 1$  and the line  $\frac{x}{3} + \frac{y}{2} = 1$ .

Solution: The given ellipse can be expressed as conics with parameters

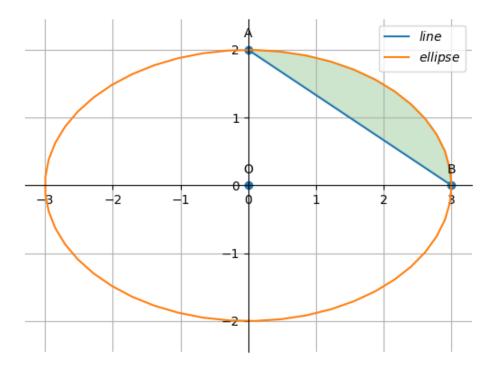


Figure 8.3.8.1:

$$\mathbf{V} = \begin{pmatrix} b^2 & 0 \\ 0 & a^2 \end{pmatrix}, \mathbf{u} = 0, f = -(a^2b^2). \tag{8.3.8.1}$$

The line parameters are

$$\mathbf{h} = \begin{pmatrix} a \\ 0 \end{pmatrix}, \mathbf{m} = \begin{pmatrix} \frac{1}{b} \\ -\frac{1}{a} \end{pmatrix}. \tag{8.3.8.2}$$

Substituting the given parameters in (F.3.1.3),

$$\mu = 0, -6 \tag{8.3.8.3}$$

yielding the points of intersection

$$\mathbf{A} = \begin{pmatrix} a \\ 0 \end{pmatrix}, \mathbf{B} = \begin{pmatrix} 0 \\ b \end{pmatrix}. \tag{8.3.8.4}$$

From Fig. 8.3.8.1, the desired area is

$$\int_0^3 \frac{2}{3} \sqrt{9 - x^2} \, dx - \int_0^3 \frac{2}{3} (3 - x) \, dx = 3 \left( \frac{\pi}{2} - 1 \right)$$
 (8.3.8.5)

8.3.9 Find the area of the smaller region bounded by the ellipse  $\frac{x^2}{a^2} + \frac{y^2}{b^2} = 1$  and the line  $\frac{x}{a} + \frac{y}{b} = 1$ .

Solution: The given ellipse can be expressed as a conic with parameters

$$\mathbf{V} = \begin{pmatrix} b^2 & 0 \\ 0 & a^2 \end{pmatrix}, \mathbf{u} = 0, f = -(a^2b^2). \tag{8.3.9.1}$$

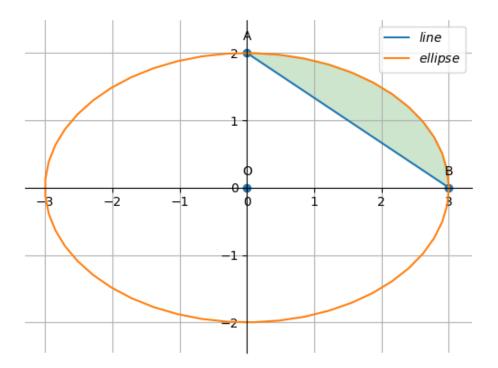


Figure 8.3.9.1:

The given line parameters are

$$\mathbf{h} = \begin{pmatrix} a \\ 0 \end{pmatrix}, \mathbf{m} = \begin{pmatrix} \frac{1}{b} \\ -\frac{1}{a} \end{pmatrix}. \tag{8.3.9.2}$$

Substituting the given parameters in (F.3.1.3)

$$\mu = 0, -6 \tag{8.3.9.3}$$

yielding the points of intersection

$$\mathbf{A} = \begin{pmatrix} a \\ 0 \end{pmatrix}, \mathbf{B} = \begin{pmatrix} 0 \\ b \end{pmatrix} \tag{8.3.9.4}$$

From Fig. 8.3.9.1, the desired area is

$$\int_0^a \frac{b}{a} \sqrt{a^2 - x^2} \, dx - \int_0^a \frac{b}{a} (a - x) \, dx = \frac{ab}{2} \left( \frac{\pi}{2} - 1 \right) \tag{8.3.9.5}$$

8.3.10 Find the area of the region bounded by the curve  $x^2 = y$  and the lines y = x + 2 and the x axis.

Solution:

8.3.11 Find the area bounded by the curve y = x|x|, x-axis and the ordinates x=-1 and x=1. Solution: The parameters of the given conics are

$$\mathbf{V}_{1} = \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 \end{pmatrix}, \mathbf{u}_{1} = \begin{pmatrix} 0 \\ -\frac{1}{2} \end{pmatrix}, f_{1} = 0$$
 (8.3.11.1)

$$\mathbf{V}_{2} = \begin{pmatrix} -1 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 \end{pmatrix}, \mathbf{u}_{2} = \begin{pmatrix} 0 \\ -\frac{1}{2} \end{pmatrix}, f_{2} = 0$$
 (8.3.11.2)

The determinant equation for the intersection of two conics is

$$\begin{vmatrix} 1 - \mu & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & -\frac{1}{2} - \frac{\mu}{2} \\ 0 & -\frac{1}{2} - \frac{\mu}{2} & 0 \end{vmatrix} = 0$$
 (8.3.11.3)

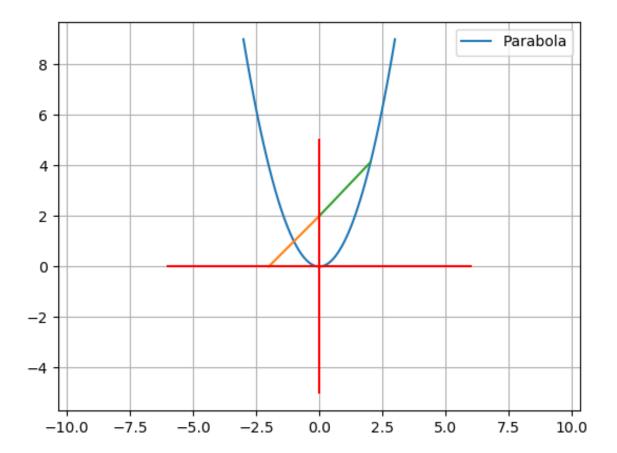


Figure 8.3.10.1:

yielding,

$$\mu^3 + \mu^2 - \mu - 1 = 0 \tag{8.3.11.4}$$

$$\implies \mu = -1, 1, 1$$
 (8.3.11.5)

8.3.12 Find the area of the circle  $x^2 + y^2 = 16$  exterior to the parabola  $y^2 = 6x$ .

Solution: The given circle and parabola can be expressed as conics with respective pa-

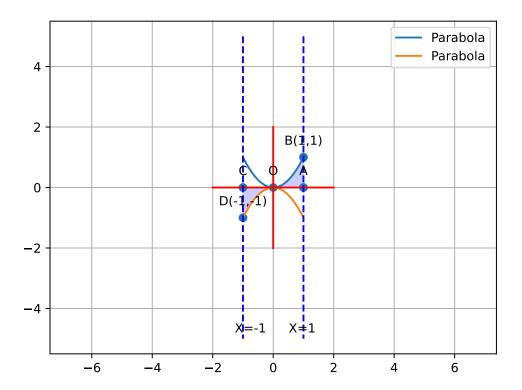


Figure 8.3.11.1:

rameters

$$\mathbf{V}_1 = \mathbf{I}, \mathbf{u_1} = 0, f_1 = -16, \tag{8.3.12.1}$$

$$\mathbf{V}_2 = \begin{pmatrix} 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 \end{pmatrix}, \mathbf{u_2} = -\begin{pmatrix} 3 \\ 0 \end{pmatrix}, f_2 = 0$$
 (8.3.12.2)

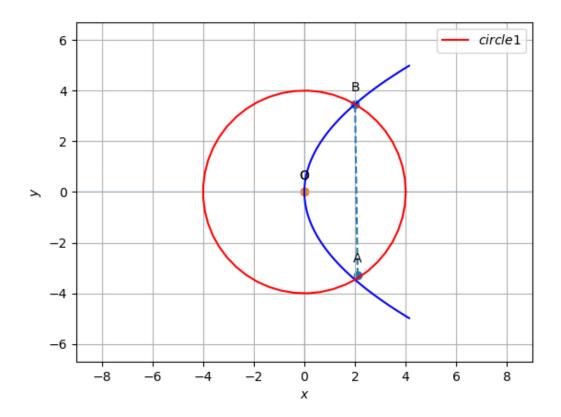


Figure 8.3.12.1:

The determinant of the intersection of the given conics is

$$\implies \begin{vmatrix} 1 & 0 & -3\mu \\ 0 & 1+\mu & 0 \\ -3\mu & 0 & -16 \end{vmatrix} = 0$$
 (8.3.12.3)

yielding

$$9\mu^3 + 9\mu^2 + 16\mu + 16 = 0 (8.3.12.4)$$

or, 
$$\mu = -1$$
 (8.3.12.5)

#### Chapter 9

# Tangent And Normal

### 9.1. Properties

9.1.1 Find the slope of the tangent to the curve

$$y = \frac{x-1}{x-2}, x \neq 2 \text{ at } x = 10.$$
 (9.1.1.1)

9.1.2 Find a point on the curve

$$y = (x-2)^2 (9.1.2.1)$$

at which a tangent is parallel to the chord joining the points (2,0) and (4,4).

**Solution:** The equation of the conic can be represented as

$$\mathbf{x}^{\top} \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 \end{pmatrix} \mathbf{x} + 2 \begin{pmatrix} -2 & \frac{-1}{2} \end{pmatrix} \mathbf{x} + 4 = 0$$
 (9.1.2.2)

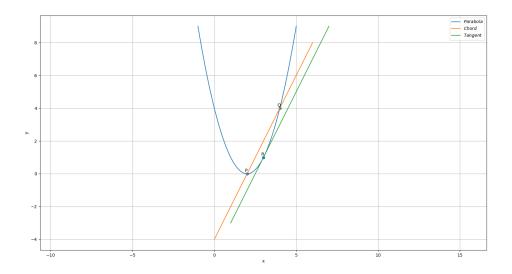


Figure 9.1.2.1:

So,

$$\mathbf{V} = \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 \end{pmatrix}, \mathbf{u}^{\top} = \begin{pmatrix} -2 & \frac{-1}{2} \end{pmatrix}, f = 4$$
 (9.1.2.3)

The direction vector of the line passing through (2,0) and (4,4) is

$$\mathbf{m} = \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 2 \end{pmatrix} \implies \mathbf{n} = \begin{pmatrix} 2 \\ -1 \end{pmatrix}. \tag{9.1.2.4}$$

From (F.4.7.1), the point of contact to parabola is given by

$$\begin{pmatrix} (\mathbf{u} + \kappa \mathbf{n})^{\top} \\ \mathbf{V} \end{pmatrix} \mathbf{q} = \begin{pmatrix} -f \\ \kappa \mathbf{n} - \mathbf{u} \end{pmatrix}$$
(9.1.2.5)

where 
$$\kappa = \frac{\mathbf{p}_1^{\top} \mathbf{u}}{\mathbf{p}_1^{\top} \mathbf{n}}, \quad \mathbf{V} \mathbf{p}_1 = 0$$
 (9.1.2.6)

The eigenvector corresponding to the zero eigenvalue is

$$\mathbf{p}_1 = \begin{pmatrix} 0 \\ 1 \end{pmatrix}, \tag{9.1.2.7}$$

from which,

$$\kappa = \frac{\begin{pmatrix} 0 & 1 \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} -2 \\ \frac{-1}{2} \end{pmatrix}}{\begin{pmatrix} 0 & 1 \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} 2 \\ -1 \end{pmatrix}}$$
(9.1.2.8)

$$=\frac{1}{2} (9.1.2.9)$$

Substituting  $\kappa$  in (9.1.2.5),

$$\begin{pmatrix}
\begin{bmatrix}
-2 \\
-\frac{1}{2}
\end{bmatrix} + \frac{1}{2} \begin{pmatrix} 2 \\
-1
\end{pmatrix}
\end{bmatrix}^{\mathsf{T}} \mathbf{q} = \begin{pmatrix}
-4 \\
\frac{1}{2} \begin{pmatrix} 2 \\
-1
\end{pmatrix} - \begin{pmatrix} -2 \\
-\frac{1}{2}
\end{pmatrix}$$

$$\Rightarrow \begin{pmatrix}
-1 & -1 \\
1 & 0 \\
0 & 0
\end{pmatrix} \mathbf{q} = \begin{pmatrix}
-4 \\
3 \\
0
\end{pmatrix}$$

$$(9.1.2.10)$$

$$(9.1.2.11)$$

As the last row elements are all zero, we can eliminate that row

$$\begin{pmatrix} -1 & -1 \\ 1 & 0 \end{pmatrix} \mathbf{q} = \begin{pmatrix} -4 \\ 3 \end{pmatrix} \tag{9.1.2.12}$$

For applying row reduction method the augmented matrix is written as

$$\begin{pmatrix} -1 & -1 & | & -4 \\ 1 & 0 & | & 3 \end{pmatrix} \tag{9.1.2.13}$$

$$\stackrel{R_1 \leftarrow R_1 + 2R_2}{\longleftrightarrow} \begin{pmatrix} 1 & -1 & | & 2 \\ 1 & 0 & | & 3 \end{pmatrix}$$

$$(9.1.2.14)$$

$$\stackrel{R_2 \leftarrow R_2 - R_1}{\longleftrightarrow} \begin{pmatrix} 1 & -1 & | & 2 \\ 0 & 1 & | & 1 \end{pmatrix}$$
(9.1.2.15)

$$\stackrel{R_1 \leftarrow R_1 + R_2}{\longleftrightarrow} \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 0 & | & 3 \\ 0 & 1 & | & 1 \end{pmatrix}$$
(9.1.2.16)

$$\implies \mathbf{q} = \begin{pmatrix} 3 \\ 1 \end{pmatrix} \tag{9.1.2.17}$$

which is the desired point of contact. See Fig. 9.1.2.1.

9.1.3 Find the equation of all lines having slope -1 that are tangents to the curve

$$y = \frac{1}{x - 1}, x \neq 1 \tag{9.1.3.1}$$

**Solution:** From the given information,

$$\mathbf{V} = \begin{pmatrix} 0 & \frac{1}{2} \\ \frac{1}{2} & 0 \end{pmatrix}, \mathbf{u} = \begin{pmatrix} 0 \\ -\frac{1}{2} \end{pmatrix}, f = -1, m = -1$$
 (9.1.3.2)

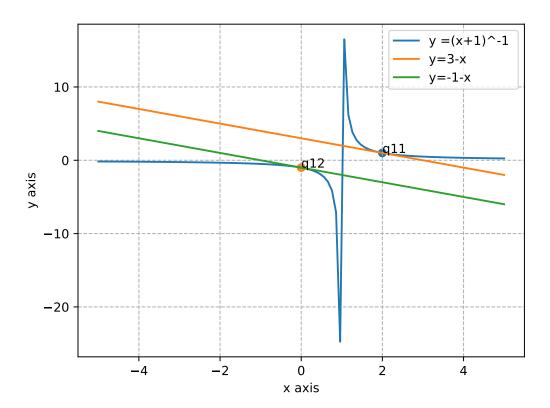


Figure 9.1.3.1:

From the above, the normal vector is

$$\mathbf{n} = \begin{pmatrix} -m \\ 1 \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 1 \end{pmatrix} \tag{9.1.3.3}$$

From (F.4.4.1), the point(s) of contact are given by

$$\mathbf{q} = \mathbf{V}^{-1}(k_i \mathbf{n} - \mathbf{u}) \text{ where,} \tag{9.1.3.4}$$

$$k_i = \pm \sqrt{\frac{f_0}{\mathbf{n}^\top \mathbf{V}^{-1} \mathbf{n}}} \tag{9.1.3.5}$$

$$f_0 = f + \mathbf{u}^\top \mathbf{V}^{-1} \mathbf{u} \tag{9.1.3.6}$$

Substituting from (9.1.3.3) and (9.1.3.2) in the above,

$$\mathbf{q} = \begin{pmatrix} 0 \\ -1 \end{pmatrix}, \begin{pmatrix} 2 \\ 1 \end{pmatrix}. \tag{9.1.3.7}$$

From (F.4.1.1), the equations of tangents are given by

$$(\mathbf{V}\mathbf{q} + \mathbf{u})^{\top}\mathbf{x} + \mathbf{u}^{\top}\mathbf{q} + f = 0$$
 (9.1.3.8)

yielding

$$\begin{pmatrix} 1 & 1 \end{pmatrix} \mathbf{x} + 1 = 0 \tag{9.1.3.9}$$

$$\begin{pmatrix} 1 & 1 \end{pmatrix} \mathbf{x} + 1 = 0 \tag{9.1.3.9}$$

$$\begin{pmatrix} 1 & 1 \end{pmatrix} \mathbf{x} - 3 = 0 \tag{9.1.3.10}$$

(9.1.3.11)

See Fig. 9.1.3.1.

9.1.4 Find the equation of all lines having slope 2 which are tangents to the curve

$$y = \frac{1}{x - 3}, x \neq 3 \tag{9.1.4.1}$$

Solution: From the given information

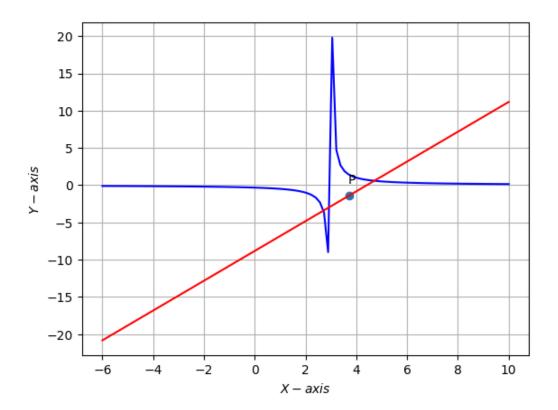


Figure 9.1.4.1:

$$\mathbf{V} = \begin{pmatrix} 0 & \frac{1}{2} \\ \frac{1}{2} & 0 \end{pmatrix}, \mathbf{u} = \begin{pmatrix} 0 \\ -\frac{3}{2} \end{pmatrix}, f = -1, m = 2$$
 (9.1.4.2)

$$\mathbf{V} = \begin{pmatrix} 0 & \frac{1}{2} \\ \frac{1}{2} & 0 \end{pmatrix}, \mathbf{u} = \begin{pmatrix} 0 \\ -\frac{3}{2} \end{pmatrix}, f = -1, m = 2$$

$$\implies \mathbf{n} = \begin{pmatrix} -m \\ 1 \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} -2 \\ 1 \end{pmatrix}$$

$$(9.1.4.2)$$

(9.1.4.4)

Hence, the given curve is a hyperbola. Substituting numerical values, we obtain the condition in (F.4.5), which implies that the line with slope 2 is not a tangent. This can be verified from Fig. 9.1.4.1.

- 9.1.5 Find points on the curve  $\frac{x^2}{9} + \frac{y^2}{16} = 1$  at which the tangents are
  - (a) parallel to x-axis
  - (b) parallel to y-axis

**Solution:** The parameters of the given conic are

$$\lambda_1 = 16, \lambda_2 = 9 \tag{9.1.5.1}$$

$$\mathbf{V} = \begin{pmatrix} \lambda_1 & 0 \\ 0 & \lambda_2 \end{pmatrix}, \mathbf{u} = \begin{pmatrix} 0 \\ 0 \end{pmatrix}, f = -144 \tag{9.1.5.2}$$

(a) The normal vector in this case is

$$\mathbf{n_1} = \begin{pmatrix} 0 \\ 1 \end{pmatrix} \tag{9.1.5.3}$$

which can be used along with the parameters in (9.1.5.2) to obtain

$$\mathbf{q_1} = \begin{pmatrix} 0 \\ 4 \end{pmatrix}, \mathbf{q_2} = \begin{pmatrix} 0 \\ -4 \end{pmatrix} \tag{9.1.5.4}$$

using (F.4.4.1).

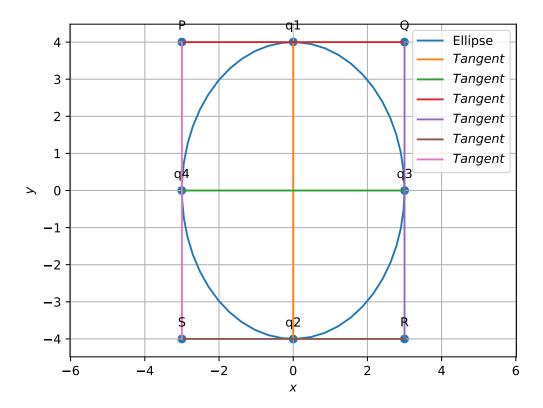


Figure 9.1.5.1:

#### (b) Simlarly, choosing

$$\mathbf{n_2} = \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 0 \end{pmatrix}, \tag{9.1.5.5}$$

$$\mathbf{q_3} = \begin{pmatrix} 3 \\ 1 \\ 0 \end{pmatrix}, \mathbf{q_4} = \begin{pmatrix} -3 \\ 0 \end{pmatrix} \tag{9.1.5.6}$$

 $9.1.6\,$  Find the equation of the tangent line to the curve

$$y = x^2 - 2x + 7 (9.1.6.1)$$

- (a) parallel to the line 2x y + 9 = 0.
- (b) perpendicular to the line 5y 15x = 13.

Solution: The parameters of the given conic are

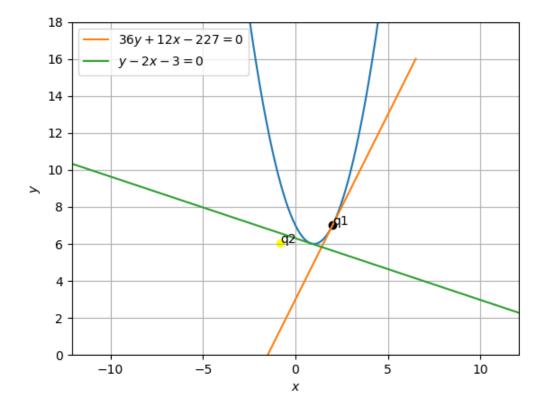


Figure 9.1.6.1:

$$\mathbf{V} = \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 \end{pmatrix}, \mathbf{u} = -\begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ \frac{1}{2} \end{pmatrix}, f = 7 \tag{9.1.6.2}$$

(a) In this case, the normal vector

$$\mathbf{n}_1 = \begin{pmatrix} 2 \\ -1 \end{pmatrix} \tag{9.1.6.3}$$

Since V is not invertible, the point of contact is given by (F.4.7.1) resulting in

$$\begin{pmatrix}
\begin{pmatrix}
-1 \\
-\frac{1}{2}
\end{pmatrix} + \frac{1}{2} \begin{pmatrix} 2 \\
-1 \end{pmatrix}^{\top} \\
\begin{pmatrix}
1 & 0 \\
0 & 0
\end{pmatrix}$$

$$\mathbf{q}_{1} = \begin{pmatrix}
-7 \\
\frac{1}{2} \begin{pmatrix} 2 \\
-1 \end{pmatrix} - \begin{pmatrix} -1 \\
-\frac{1}{2} \end{pmatrix}$$
(9.1.6.4)

By solving the above equation, we can get the point of contact as

$$\mathbf{q}_1 = \begin{pmatrix} 2 \\ 7 \end{pmatrix} \tag{9.1.6.5}$$

The tangent equation is then obtained as

$$\mathbf{n}_1^{\top}(\mathbf{x} - \mathbf{q}_1) = 0 \tag{9.1.6.6}$$

$$\implies \left(2 \quad -1\right)\mathbf{x} + 3 = 0 \tag{9.1.6.7}$$

(b) In this case,

$$\mathbf{n}_2 = \begin{pmatrix} 1\\3 \end{pmatrix} \tag{9.1.6.8}$$

resulting in

$$\begin{pmatrix}
\begin{pmatrix}
-1 \\
-\frac{1}{2}
\end{pmatrix} + -\frac{1}{6} \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 3 \end{pmatrix}^{\top} \\
\begin{pmatrix}
1 \\ 0 \\ 0 & 0
\end{pmatrix} \mathbf{q}_{2} = \begin{pmatrix}
-7 \\
-\frac{1}{6} \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 3 \end{pmatrix} - \begin{pmatrix} -1 \\ -\frac{1}{2} \end{pmatrix}
\end{pmatrix}$$
(9.1.6.9)

or, 
$$\mathbf{q}_2 = \begin{pmatrix} \frac{5}{6} \\ \frac{217}{36} \end{pmatrix}$$
 (9.1.6.10)

The tangent equation is

$$\mathbf{n}_2^{\top}(\mathbf{x} - \mathbf{q}_2) = 0 \tag{9.1.6.11}$$

or, 
$$\begin{pmatrix} 1 & 3 \end{pmatrix} \mathbf{x} = \frac{227}{12}$$
 (9.1.6.12)

9.1.7

9.1.8 Find the equation of the tangent to the curve

$$y = \sqrt{3x - 2} \tag{9.1.8.1}$$

which is parallel to the line

$$4x - 2y + 5 = 0 (9.1.8.2)$$

**Solution:** The parameters for the given conic are

$$\mathbf{V} = \begin{pmatrix} 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 \end{pmatrix},\tag{9.1.8.3}$$

$$\mathbf{u} = \begin{pmatrix} -3/2 \\ 0 \end{pmatrix}, \tag{9.1.8.4}$$

$$f = 2 (9.1.8.5)$$

which represent a parabola. Following the approach in problem 9.1.6,

$$\mathbf{p_1} = \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 0 \end{pmatrix}, \qquad (9.1.8.6)$$

$$\mathbf{n} = \begin{pmatrix} -2 \\ 1 \end{pmatrix}, \qquad (9.1.8.7)$$

$$\mathbf{n} = \begin{pmatrix} -2\\1 \end{pmatrix},\tag{9.1.8.7}$$

yielding the matrix equation

$$\begin{pmatrix} -3 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 \end{pmatrix} \mathbf{q} = \begin{pmatrix} -41/16 \\ 0 \\ 3/4 \end{pmatrix}$$
 (9.1.8.8)

(9.1.8.9)

The augmented matrix for (9.1.8.8) can be expressed as

$$\stackrel{R_2 \leftrightarrow R_3}{\longleftrightarrow} \begin{pmatrix}
-3 & 0 & | & -41/16 \\
0 & 1 & | & 0 \\
0 & 0 & | & 3/4
\end{pmatrix}$$
(9.1.8.10)

$$\implies \mathbf{q} = \begin{pmatrix} \frac{41}{48} \\ \frac{3}{4} \end{pmatrix} \tag{9.1.8.12}$$

The equation of tangent is then obtained as

$$\begin{pmatrix} -2 & 1 \end{pmatrix} \mathbf{x} + \frac{23}{24} = 0 \tag{9.1.8.13}$$

See Fig. 9.1.8.1.

9.1.9 Find the point at which the line y = x + 1 is a tangent to the curve  $y^2 = 4x$ .

**Solution:** The parameters of the conic are

$$\mathbf{V} = \begin{pmatrix} 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 \end{pmatrix}, \mathbf{u} = \begin{pmatrix} -2 & 0 \end{pmatrix}, f = 0 \tag{9.1.9.1}$$

Following the approach in Problem 9.1.6, since

$$\mathbf{n} = \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ -1 \end{pmatrix} \tag{9.1.9.2}$$

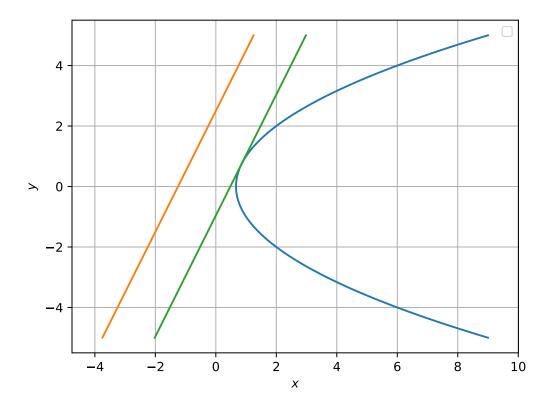


Figure 9.1.8.1:

we obtain

$$\mathbf{q} = \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 2 \end{pmatrix} \tag{9.1.9.3}$$

See Fig. 9.1.9.1,

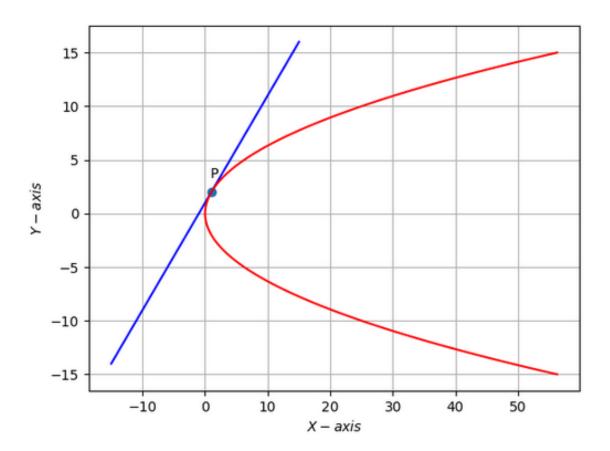


Figure 9.1.9.1:

## 9.2. Miscellaneous

9.2.1 Find the equation of the normal to curve  $x^2 = 4y$  which passes through the point (1, 2).

Solution: The conic parameters are

$$\mathbf{V} = \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 \end{pmatrix}, \mathbf{u} = \begin{pmatrix} 0 \\ -2 \end{pmatrix}, f = 0 \tag{9.2.1.1}$$

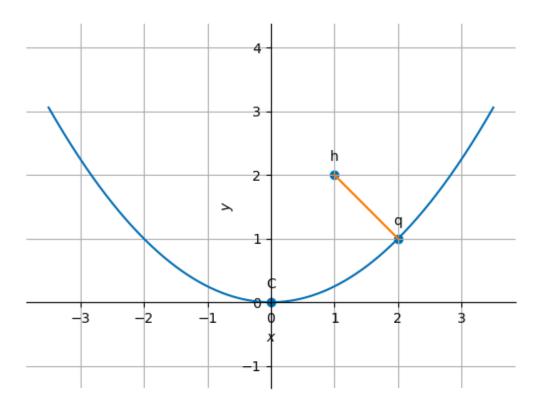


Figure 9.2.1.1:

Substituting these values in (F.4.10.1), we obtain

$$m = 1 (9.2.1.2)$$

as the only real solution. Thus,

$$\mathbf{m} = \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 1 \end{pmatrix}, \tag{9.2.1.3}$$

and the equation of the normal is then obtained as

$$\mathbf{m}^{\top} (\mathbf{x} - \mathbf{h}) = 0 \tag{9.2.1.4}$$

$$\implies \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 1 \end{pmatrix} \mathbf{x} = \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 1 \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 2 \end{pmatrix} \tag{9.2.1.5}$$

$$=3$$
 (9.2.1.6)

9.2.2 The line y = mx + 1 is a tangent to the curve  $y^2 = 4x$ , find the value of m.

Solution: The parameters for the given conic are

$$\mathbf{V} = \begin{pmatrix} 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 \end{pmatrix}, \mathbf{u} = \begin{pmatrix} -2 \\ 0 \end{pmatrix}, f = 0 \tag{9.2.2.1}$$

The given tangent can be expressed in parametric form as

$$\mathbf{x} = \mathbf{e}_2 + \mu \mathbf{m} \tag{9.2.2.2}$$

Substituting from (9.2.2.2) and (9.2.2.1) in (F.4.8.1) and solving, we obtain

$$m = 1.$$
 (9.2.2.3)

9.2.3 Find the normal at the point (1,1) on the curve

$$2y + x^2 = 3 (9.2.3.1)$$

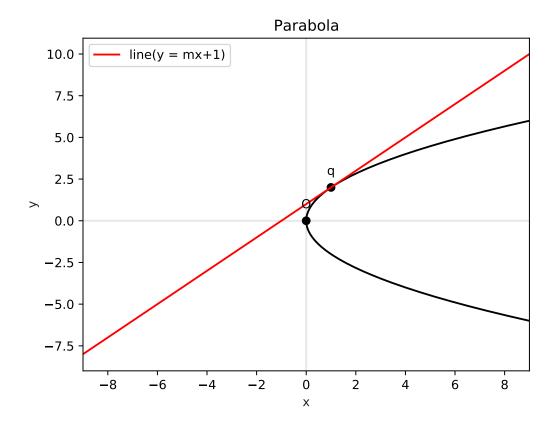


Figure 9.2.2.1:

Solution: Use (F.3.2.1) with

$$\mathbf{m} = \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ m \end{pmatrix} \tag{9.2.3.2}$$

# Appendix A

# Vectors

### **A.1.** $2 \times 1$ vectors

A.1.1. Let

$$\mathbf{A} \equiv \overrightarrow{A} = \begin{pmatrix} a_1 \\ a_2 \end{pmatrix} \tag{A.1.1.1}$$

$$\equiv a_1 \overrightarrow{i} + a_2 \overrightarrow{j}, \qquad (A.1.1.2)$$

$$\mathbf{B} = \begin{pmatrix} b_1 \\ b_2 \end{pmatrix},\tag{A.1.1.3}$$

be  $2 \times 1$  vectors. Then, the determinant of the  $2 \times 2$  matrix

$$\mathbf{M} = \begin{pmatrix} \mathbf{A} & \mathbf{B} \end{pmatrix} \tag{A.1.1.4}$$

is defined as

$$\begin{vmatrix} \mathbf{M} \end{vmatrix} = \begin{vmatrix} \mathbf{A} & \mathbf{B} \end{vmatrix}$$

$$= \begin{vmatrix} a_1 & b_1 \\ a_2 & b_2 \end{vmatrix} = a_1 b_2 - a_2 b_1$$
(A.1.1.6)

- A.1.2. The value of the cross product of two vectors is given by (A.1.1.5).
- A.1.3. The area of the triangle with vertices  $\mathbf{A}, \mathbf{B}, \mathbf{C}$  is given by

$$\frac{1}{2} \| (\mathbf{A} - \mathbf{B}) \times (\mathbf{A} - \mathbf{C}) \| = \frac{1}{2} \| \mathbf{A} \times \mathbf{B} + \mathbf{B} \times \mathbf{C} + \mathbf{C} \times \mathbf{A} \|$$
(A.1.3.1)

A.1.4. If

$$\|\mathbf{A} \times \mathbf{B}\| = \|\mathbf{C} \times \mathbf{D}\|, \text{ then }$$
 (A.1.4.1)

$$\mathbf{A} \times \mathbf{B} = \pm \left( \mathbf{C} \times \mathbf{D} \right) \tag{A.1.4.2}$$

where the sign depends on the orientation of the vectors.

- A.1.5. The median divides the triangle into two triangles of equal area.
- A.1.6. The transpose of A is defined as

$$\mathbf{A}^{\top} = \begin{pmatrix} a_1 & a_2 \end{pmatrix} \tag{A.1.6.1}$$

A.1.7. The inner product or dot product is defined as

$$\mathbf{A}^{\top}\mathbf{B} \equiv \mathbf{A} \cdot \mathbf{B} \tag{A.1.7.1}$$

$$= \begin{pmatrix} a_1 & a_2 \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} b_1 \\ b_2 \end{pmatrix} = a_1 b_1 + a_2 b_2 \tag{A.1.7.2}$$

A.1.8. norm of  $\mathbf{A}$  is defined as

$$||A|| \equiv \left| \overrightarrow{A} \right| \tag{A.1.8.1}$$

$$= \sqrt{\mathbf{A}^{\top}\mathbf{A}} = \sqrt{a_1^2 + a_2^2} \tag{A.1.8.2}$$

Thus,

$$\|\lambda \mathbf{A}\| \equiv \left|\lambda \overrightarrow{A}\right| \tag{A.1.8.3}$$

$$= |\lambda| \|\mathbf{A}\| \tag{A.1.8.4}$$

A.1.9. The distance between the points  $\mathbf{A}$  and  $\mathbf{B}$  is given by

$$\|\mathbf{A} - \mathbf{B}\| \tag{A.1.9.1}$$

A.1.10. Let  $\mathbf{x}$  be equidistant from the points  $\mathbf{A}$  and  $\mathbf{B}$ . Then

$$(\mathbf{A} - \mathbf{B})^{\top} \mathbf{x} = \frac{\|\mathbf{A}\|^2 - \|\mathbf{B}\|^2}{2}$$
 (A.1.10.1)

Solution:

$$\|\mathbf{x} - \mathbf{A}\| = \|\mathbf{A} - \mathbf{B}\| \tag{A.1.10.2}$$

$$\implies \|\mathbf{x} - \mathbf{A}\|^2 = \|\mathbf{x} - \mathbf{B}\|^2 \tag{A.1.10.3}$$

which can be expressed as

$$(\mathbf{x} - \mathbf{A})^{\top} (\mathbf{x} - \mathbf{A}) = (\mathbf{x} - \mathbf{B})^{\top} (\mathbf{x} - \mathbf{B})$$

$$\implies \|\mathbf{x}\|^2 - 2\mathbf{x}^{\top} \mathbf{A} + \|\mathbf{A}\|^2$$

$$= \|\mathbf{x}\|^2 - 2\mathbf{x}^{\top} \mathbf{B} + \|\mathbf{B}\|^2 \quad (A.1.10.4)$$

which can be simplified to obtain (A.1.10.1).

A.1.11. If  $\mathbf{x}$  lies on the x-axis and is equidistant from the points  $\mathbf{A}$  and  $\mathbf{B}$ ,

$$\mathbf{x} = x\mathbf{e}_1 \tag{A.1.11.1}$$

where

$$x = \frac{\|\mathbf{A}\|^2 - \|\mathbf{B}\|^2}{2(\mathbf{A} - \mathbf{B})^{\top} \mathbf{e}_1}$$
(A.1.11.2)

Solution: From (A.1.10.1).

$$x (\mathbf{A} - \mathbf{B})^{\top} \mathbf{e}_1 = \frac{\|\mathbf{A}\|^2 - \|\mathbf{B}\|^2}{2}$$
 (A.1.11.3)

yielding (A.1.11.2).

A.1.12. The angle between two vectors is given by

$$\theta = \cos^{-1} \frac{\mathbf{A}^{\mathsf{T}} \mathbf{B}}{\|A\| \|B\|} \tag{A.1.12.1}$$

A.1.13. If two vectors are orthogonal (perpendicular),

$$\mathbf{A}^{\mathsf{T}}\mathbf{B} = 0 \tag{A.1.13.1}$$

A.1.14. For an isoceles triangle ABC ith AB = AC, the median  $AD \perp BC$ .

A.1.15. The direction vector of the line joining two points  $\mathbf{A}, \mathbf{B}$  is given by

$$\mathbf{m} = \mathbf{A} - \mathbf{B} \tag{A.1.15.1}$$

A.1.16. The points  $\mathbf{AAA}$ 

A.1.17. The unit vector in the direction of  $\mathbf{m}$  is defined as

$$\frac{\mathbf{m}}{\|\mathbf{m}\|}\tag{A.1.17.1}$$

A.1.18. If the direction vector of a line is expressed as

$$\mathbf{m} = \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ m \end{pmatrix}, \tag{A.1.18.1}$$

the m is defined to be the slope of the line.

A.1.19.  $AB \parallel CD$  if

$$\mathbf{A} - \mathbf{B} = k \left( \mathbf{C} - \mathbf{D} \right) \tag{A.1.19.1}$$

A.1.20. The normal vector to  $\mathbf{m}$  is defined by

$$\mathbf{m}^{\mathsf{T}}\mathbf{n} = 0 \tag{A.1.20.1}$$

A.1.21. If

$$\mathbf{m}^{\mathsf{T}}\mathbf{n}_1 = 0 \tag{A.1.21.1}$$

$$\mathbf{m}^{\top}\mathbf{n}_2 = 0, \tag{A.1.21.2}$$

$$\mathbf{n}_1 \parallel \mathbf{n}_2 \tag{A.1.21.3}$$

A.1.22. The point **P** that divides the line segment AB in the ratio k:1 is given by

$$\mathbf{P} = \frac{k\mathbf{B} + \mathbf{A}}{k+1} \tag{A.1.22.1}$$

A.1.23. The standard basis vectors are defined as

$$\mathbf{e}_1 = \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 0 \end{pmatrix}, \tag{A.1.23.1}$$

$$\mathbf{e}_{1} = \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 0 \end{pmatrix}, \qquad (A.1.23.1)$$

$$\mathbf{e}_{2} = \begin{pmatrix} 0 \\ 1 \end{pmatrix}. \qquad (A.1.23.2)$$

A.1.24. If ABCD be a parallelogram,

$$\mathbf{B} - \mathbf{A} = \mathbf{C} - \mathbf{D} \tag{A.1.24.1}$$

A.1.25. Diagonals of a parallelogram bisect each other.

A.1.26. The area of the parallelogram with vertices A, B, C and D is given by

$$\|(\mathbf{A} - \mathbf{B}) \times (\mathbf{A} - \mathbf{D})\| = \|\mathbf{A} \times \mathbf{B} + \mathbf{B} \times \mathbf{C} + \mathbf{C} \times \mathbf{A}\|$$
(A.1.26.1)

A.1.27. Points **A**, **B** and **C** form a triangle if

$$p\left(\mathbf{A} - \mathbf{B}\right) + q\left(\mathbf{A} - \mathbf{C}\right) = 0 \tag{A.1.27.1}$$

or, 
$$(p+q) \mathbf{A} - p\mathbf{B} - q\mathbf{C} = 0$$
 (A.1.27.2)

$$\implies p = 0, q = 0 \tag{A.1.27.3}$$

are linearly independent.

A.1.28. In  $\triangle ABC$ , if **D**, **E** divide the lines AB, AC in the ratio k:1 respectively, then  $DE \parallel$ BC.

Proof. From (A.1.22.1),

$$\mathbf{D} = \frac{k\mathbf{B} + \mathbf{A}}{k+1} \tag{A.1.28.1}$$

$$\mathbf{E} = \frac{k\mathbf{C} + \mathbf{A}}{k+1} \tag{A.1.28.2}$$

$$\implies \mathbf{D} - \mathbf{E} = \frac{k}{k+1} \left( \mathbf{B} - \mathbf{C} \right) \tag{A.1.28.3}$$

Thus, from Appendix A.1.18,  $DE \parallel BC$ .

A.1.29. In  $\triangle ABC$ , if  $DE \parallel BC$ , **D** and **E** divide the lines AB, AC in the same ratio.

*Proof.* If  $DE \parallel BC$ , from (A.1.19.1)

$$(\mathbf{B} - \mathbf{C}) = k(\mathbf{D} - \mathbf{E}) \tag{A.1.29.1}$$

Using (A.1.22.1), let

$$\mathbf{D} = \frac{k_1 \mathbf{B} + \mathbf{A}}{k_1 + 1}$$
(A.1.29.2)
$$\mathbf{E} = \frac{k_2 \mathbf{C} + \mathbf{A}}{k_2 + 1}$$
(A.1.29.3)

$$\mathbf{E} = \frac{k_2 \mathbf{C} + \mathbf{A}}{k_2 + 1} \tag{A.1.29.3}$$

Subtituting the above in (A.1.29.1), after some algebra, we obtain

$$(p+q)\mathbf{A} - p\mathbf{B} - q\mathbf{C} = 0 (A.1.29.4)$$

where

$$p = \frac{1}{k} - \frac{k_1}{k_1 + 1}, q = \frac{1}{k} - \frac{k_1}{k_1 + 1}$$
(A.1.29.5)

From (A.1.27.2),

$$p = q = 0 (A.1.29.6)$$

$$\implies k_1 = k_2 = \frac{1}{k - 1} \tag{A.1.29.7}$$

# **A.2.** $3 \times 1$ vectors

A.2.1. Let

$$\mathbf{A} = \begin{pmatrix} a_1 \\ a_2 \\ a_3 \end{pmatrix} \equiv a_1 \overrightarrow{i} + a_2 \overrightarrow{j} + a_3 \overrightarrow{j}, \qquad (A.2.1.1)$$

$$\mathbf{B} = \begin{pmatrix} b_1 \\ b_2 \\ b_3 \end{pmatrix}, \qquad (A.2.1.2)$$

$$\mathbf{B} = \begin{pmatrix} b_1 \\ b_2 \\ b_3 \end{pmatrix}, \tag{A.2.1.2}$$

and

$$\mathbf{A}_{ij} = \begin{pmatrix} a_i \\ a_j \end{pmatrix},\tag{A.2.1.3}$$

$$\mathbf{A}_{ij} = \begin{pmatrix} a_i \\ a_j \end{pmatrix}, \tag{A.2.1.3}$$

$$\mathbf{B}_{ij} = \begin{pmatrix} b_i \\ b_j \end{pmatrix}. \tag{A.2.1.4}$$

A.2.2. The cross product or vector product of  $\mathbf{A}, \mathbf{B}$  is defined as

$$\mathbf{A} \times \mathbf{B} = \begin{pmatrix} \begin{vmatrix} \mathbf{A}_{23} & \mathbf{B}_{23} \\ \mathbf{A}_{31} & \mathbf{B}_{31} \\ \mathbf{A}_{12} & \mathbf{B}_{12} \end{pmatrix}$$
(A.2.2.1)

A.2.3. Verify that

$$\mathbf{A} \times \mathbf{B} = -\mathbf{B} \times \mathbf{A} \tag{A.2.3.1}$$

A.2.4. The area of a triangle is given by

$$\frac{1}{2} \left\| \mathbf{A} \times \mathbf{B} \right\| \tag{A.2.4.1}$$

## Appendix B

# Matrices

## **B.1.** Eigenvalues and Eigenvectors

B.1.1. The eigenvalue  $\lambda$  and the eigenvector **x** for a matrix **A** are defined as,

$$\mathbf{A}\mathbf{x} = \lambda\mathbf{x} \tag{B.1.1.1}$$

B.1.2. The eigenvalues are calculated by solving the equation

$$f(\lambda) = \left| \lambda \mathbf{I} - \mathbf{A} \right| = 0 \tag{B.1.2.1}$$

The above equation is known as the characteristic equation.

B.1.3. According to the Cayley-Hamilton theorem,

$$f(\lambda) = 0 \implies f(\mathbf{A}) = 0$$
 (B.1.3.1)

B.1.4. The trace of a square matrix is defined to be the sum of the diagonal elements.

$$\operatorname{tr}(\mathbf{A}) = \sum_{i=1}^{N} a_{ii}.$$
(B.1.4.1)

where  $a_{ii}$  is the *i*th diagonal element of the matrix **A**.

B.1.5. The trace of a matrix is equal to the sum of the eigenvalues

$$\operatorname{tr}(\mathbf{A}) = \sum_{i=1}^{N} \lambda_{i}$$
 (B.1.5.1)

#### **B.2.** Determinants

B.2.1. Let

$$\mathbf{A} = \begin{pmatrix} a_1 & b_1 & c_1 \\ a_2 & b_2 & c_2 \\ a_3 & b_3 & c_3 \end{pmatrix}. \tag{B.2.1.1}$$

be a  $3 \times 3$  matrix. Then,

$$\begin{vmatrix} \mathbf{A} \end{vmatrix} = a_1 \begin{pmatrix} b_2 & c_2 \\ b_3 & c_3 \end{pmatrix} - a_2 \begin{pmatrix} b_1 & c_1 \\ b_3 & c_3 \end{pmatrix} + a_3 \begin{pmatrix} a_1 & b_1 \\ a_2 & b_2 \end{pmatrix}. \quad (B.2.1.2)$$

B.2.2. Let  $\lambda_1, \lambda_2, \dots, \lambda_n$  be the eigenvalues of a matrix **A**. Then, the product of the eigenvalues is equal to the determinant of **A**.

$$\left| \mathbf{A} \right| = \prod_{i=1}^{n} \lambda_i \tag{B.2.2.1}$$

B.2.3.

$$\begin{vmatrix} \mathbf{A}\mathbf{B} \end{vmatrix} = \begin{vmatrix} \mathbf{A} \end{vmatrix} \begin{vmatrix} \mathbf{B} \end{vmatrix} \tag{B.2.3.1}$$

B.2.4. If **A** be an  $n \times n$  matrix,

$$\left| k\mathbf{A} \right| = k^n \left| \mathbf{A} \right| \tag{B.2.4.1}$$

### **B.3.** Rank of a Matrix

- B.3.1. The rank of a matrix is defined as the number of linearly independent rows. This is also known as the row rank.
- B.3.2. Row rank = Column rank.
- B.3.3. The rank of a matrix is obtained as the number of nonzero rows obtained after row reduction.
- B.3.4. An  $n \times n$  matrix is invertible if and only if its rank is n.
- B.3.5. Points  $\mathbf{A}, \mathbf{B}, \mathbf{C}$  are on a line if

$$\operatorname{rank} \begin{pmatrix} \mathbf{A} \\ \mathbf{B} \\ \mathbf{C} \end{pmatrix} = 1 \tag{B.3.5.1}$$

B.3.6. Points A, B, C, D form a paralelogram if

$$\operatorname{rank} \begin{pmatrix} \mathbf{A} \\ \mathbf{B} \\ \mathbf{C} \\ \mathbf{D} \end{pmatrix} = 1, \operatorname{rank} \begin{pmatrix} \mathbf{A} \\ \mathbf{B} \\ \mathbf{C} \end{pmatrix} = 2 \tag{B.3.6.1}$$

#### **B.4.** Inverse of a Matrix

B.4.1. For a  $2 \times 2$  matrix

$$\mathbf{A} = \begin{pmatrix} a_1 & b_1 \\ a_2 & b_2 \end{pmatrix},\tag{B.4.1.1}$$

the inverse is given by

$$\mathbf{A}^{-1} = \frac{1}{\left|\mathbf{A}\right|} \begin{pmatrix} b_2 & -b_1 \\ -a_2 & a_1 \end{pmatrix},\tag{B.4.1.2}$$

B.4.2. For higher order matrices, the inverse should be calculated using row operations.

## **B.5.** Orthogonality

B.5.1. The rotation matrix is defined as

$$\mathbf{R}_{\theta} = \begin{pmatrix} \cos \theta & -\sin \theta \\ \sin \theta & \cos \theta \end{pmatrix}, \quad \theta \in [0, 2\pi]$$
 (B.5.1.1)

B.5.2. The rotation matrix is orthogonal

$$\mathbf{R}_{\theta}^{\top} \mathbf{R}_{\theta} = \mathbf{R}_{\theta} \mathbf{R}_{\theta}^{\top} = \mathbf{I} \tag{B.5.2.1}$$

B.5.3. If the angle of rotation is  $\frac{\pi}{2}$ ,

$$\mathbf{m}^{\mathsf{T}}\mathbf{n} = 0 \implies \mathbf{n} = \mathbf{R}_{\frac{\pi}{2}}\mathbf{m}$$
 (B.5.3.1)

B.5.4.

$$\mathbf{n}^{\top}\mathbf{h} = 1 \implies \mathbf{n} = \frac{\mathbf{e}_1}{\mathbf{e}_1^{\top}\mathbf{h}} + \mu \mathbf{R}_{\frac{\pi}{2}}\mathbf{h}, \quad \mu \in \mathbb{R}.$$
 (B.5.4.1)

B.5.5. The affine transformation is given by

$$\mathbf{x} = \mathbf{P}\mathbf{y} + \mathbf{c}$$
 (Affine Transformation) (B.5.5.1)

where  $\mathbf{P}$  is invertible.

B.5.6. The eigenvalue decomposition of a symmetric matrix V is given by

$$\mathbf{P}^{\top}\mathbf{V}\mathbf{P} = \mathbf{D}$$
. (Eigenvalue Decomposition) (B.5.6.1)

$$\mathbf{D} = \begin{pmatrix} \lambda_1 & 0 \\ 0 & \lambda_2 \end{pmatrix}, \tag{B.5.6.2}$$

$$\mathbf{P} = \begin{pmatrix} \mathbf{p}_1 & \mathbf{p}_2 \end{pmatrix}, \quad \mathbf{P}^{\top} = \mathbf{P}^{-1}, \tag{B.5.6.3}$$

# Appendix C

## Linear Forms

#### C.1. Two Dimensions

C.1.1. The equation of a line is given by

$$\mathbf{n}^{\mathsf{T}}\mathbf{x} = c \tag{C.1.1.1}$$

where  $\mathbf{n}$  is the normal vector of the line.

C.1.2. The equation of a line with normal vector  $\mathbf{n}$  and passing through a point  $\mathbf{A}$  is given by

$$\mathbf{n}^{\top} \left( \mathbf{x} - \mathbf{A} \right) = 0 \tag{C.1.2.1}$$

C.1.3. The equation of a line L is also given by

$$\mathbf{n}^{\top}\mathbf{x} = \begin{cases} 0 & \mathbf{0} \in L \\ 1 & \text{otherwise} \end{cases}$$
 (C.1.3.1)

#### C.1.4. Points A, B, C are collinear if

$$rank\left(\mathbf{B} - \mathbf{A} \quad \mathbf{C} - \mathbf{A}\right) < 2 \tag{C.1.4.1}$$

Proof. From (C.1.1.1),

$$\mathbf{n}^{\mathsf{T}}\mathbf{A} = c \tag{C.1.4.2}$$

$$\mathbf{n}^{\mathsf{T}}\mathbf{B} = c \tag{C.1.4.3}$$

$$\mathbf{n}^{\top}\mathbf{C} = c \tag{C.1.4.4}$$

which can be expressed as

$$\begin{pmatrix} \mathbf{A} & \mathbf{B} & \mathbf{C} \end{pmatrix}^{\top} \mathbf{n} = c \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 1 \\ 1 \end{pmatrix}$$
 (C.1.4.5)

The above set of equations are consistent if

$$\operatorname{rank} \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 1 & 1 \\ \mathbf{A} & \mathbf{B} & \mathbf{C} \end{pmatrix} < 3 \tag{C.1.4.6}$$

$$\implies \operatorname{rank} \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 0 & 0 \\ \mathbf{A} & \mathbf{B} - \mathbf{A} & \mathbf{C} - \mathbf{A} \end{pmatrix} < 3 \tag{C.1.4.7}$$

using the fact that row rank = column rank. The above condition can then be expressed as (C.1.4.1).

C.1.5. The parametric equation of a line is given by

$$\mathbf{x} = \mathbf{A} + \lambda \mathbf{m} \tag{C.1.5.1}$$

where  $\mathbf{m}$  is the direction vector of the line and  $\mathbf{A}$  is any point on the line.

C.1.6. Let **A** and **B** be two points on a straight line and let  $\mathbf{P} = \begin{pmatrix} p_1 \\ p_2 \end{pmatrix}$  be any point on it. If  $p_2$  is known, then

$$\mathbf{P} = \mathbf{A} + \frac{p_2 - \mathbf{e}_2^{\top} \mathbf{A}}{\mathbf{e}_2^{\top} (\mathbf{B} - \mathbf{A})} (\mathbf{B} - \mathbf{A})$$
 (C.1.6.1)

**Solution:** The equation of the line can be expressed in parametric from as

$$\mathbf{x} = \mathbf{A} + \lambda \left( \mathbf{B} - \mathbf{A} \right) \tag{C.1.6.2}$$

$$\implies \mathbf{P} = \mathbf{A} + \lambda \left( \mathbf{B} - \mathbf{A} \right) \tag{C.1.6.3}$$

$$\implies \mathbf{e}_2^{\top} \mathbf{P} = \mathbf{e}_2^{\top} \mathbf{A} + \lambda \mathbf{e}_2^{\top} (\mathbf{B} - \mathbf{A})$$
 (C.1.6.4)

$$\implies p_2 = \mathbf{e}_2^{\top} \mathbf{A} + \lambda \mathbf{e}_2^{\top} (\mathbf{B} - \mathbf{A})$$
 (C.1.6.5)

or, 
$$\lambda = \frac{p_2 - \mathbf{e}_2^{\top} \mathbf{A}}{\mathbf{e}_2^{\top} (\mathbf{B} - \mathbf{A})}$$
 (C.1.6.6)

yielding (C.1.6.1).

C.1.7. The distance from a point **P** to the line in (C.1.1.1) is given by

$$d = \frac{\left|\mathbf{n}^{\top}\mathbf{P} - c\right|}{\|\mathbf{n}\|} \tag{C.1.7.1}$$

**Solution:** Without loss of generality, let  $\mathbf{A}$  be the foot of the perpendicular from  $\mathbf{P}$  to the line in (C.1.5.1). The equation of the normal to (C.1.1.1) can then be expressed

as

$$\mathbf{x} = \mathbf{A} + \lambda \mathbf{n} \tag{C.1.7.2}$$

$$\implies \mathbf{P} - \mathbf{A} = \lambda \mathbf{n} \tag{C.1.7.3}$$

 $\therefore$  **P** lies on (C.1.7.2). From the above, the desired distance can be expressed as

$$d = \|\mathbf{P} - \mathbf{A}\| = |\lambda| \|\mathbf{n}\| \tag{C.1.7.4}$$

From (C.1.7.3),

$$\mathbf{n}^{\top} (\mathbf{P} - \mathbf{A}) = \lambda \mathbf{n}^{\top} \mathbf{n} = \lambda \|\mathbf{n}\|^{2}$$
 (C.1.7.5)

$$\implies |\lambda| = \frac{\left|\mathbf{n}^{\top} \left(\mathbf{P} - \mathbf{A}\right)\right|}{\left\|\mathbf{n}\right\|^{2}} \tag{C.1.7.6}$$

Substituting the above in (C.1.7.4) and using the fact that

$$\mathbf{n}^{\mathsf{T}}\mathbf{A} = c \tag{C.1.7.7}$$

from (C.1.1.1), yields (C.1.7.1)

C.1.8. The distance from the origin to the line in (C.1.1.1) is given by

$$d = \frac{|c|}{\|\mathbf{n}\|} \tag{C.1.8.1}$$

C.1.9. The distance between the parallel lines

$$\mathbf{n}^{\top} \mathbf{x} = c_1$$

$$\mathbf{n}^{\top} \mathbf{x} = c_2$$
(C.1.9.1)

is given by

$$d = \frac{|c_1 - c_2|}{\|\mathbf{n}\|} \tag{C.1.9.2}$$

C.1.10. The equation of the line perpendicular to (C.1.1.1) and passing through the point **P** is given by

$$\mathbf{m}^{\top} \left( \mathbf{x} - \mathbf{P} \right) = 0 \tag{C.1.10.1}$$

C.1.11. The foot of the perpendicular from  $\mathbf{P}$  to the line in (C.1.1.1) is given by

$$\begin{pmatrix} \mathbf{m} & \mathbf{n} \end{pmatrix}^{\top} \mathbf{x} = \begin{pmatrix} \mathbf{m}^{\top} \mathbf{P} \\ c \end{pmatrix}$$
 (C.1.11.1)

**Solution:** From (C.1.1.1) and (C.1.2.1) the foot of the perpendicular satisfies the equations

$$\mathbf{n}^{\mathsf{T}}\mathbf{x} = c \tag{C.1.11.2}$$

$$\mathbf{m}^{\top} \left( \mathbf{x} - \mathbf{P} \right) = 0 \tag{C.1.11.3}$$

where  $\mathbf{m}$  is the direction vector of the given line. Combining the above into a matrix equation results in (C.1.11.1).

C.1.12. The equations of the angle bisectors of the lines

$$\mathbf{n}_1^{\mathsf{T}}\mathbf{x} = c_1 \tag{C.1.12.1}$$

$$\mathbf{n}_2^{\mathsf{T}}\mathbf{x} = c_2 \tag{C.1.12.2}$$

are given by

$$\frac{\mathbf{n}_1^{\mathsf{T}}\mathbf{x} - c_1}{\|\mathbf{n}_1\|} = \pm \frac{\mathbf{n}_2^{\mathsf{T}}\mathbf{x} - c_2}{\|\mathbf{n}_2\|}$$
 (C.1.12.3)

*Proof.* Any point on the angle bisector is equidistant from the lines.  $\Box$ 

### C.2. Three Dimensions

C.2.1. Points  $\mathbf{A}, \mathbf{B}, \mathbf{C}$  are on a line if

$$\operatorname{rank} \begin{pmatrix} \mathbf{A} \\ \mathbf{B} \\ \mathbf{C} \end{pmatrix} = 1 \tag{C.2.1.1}$$

C.2.2. Points A, B, C, D form a paralelogram if

$$\operatorname{rank} \begin{pmatrix} \mathbf{A} \\ \mathbf{B} \\ \mathbf{C} \\ \mathbf{D} \end{pmatrix} = 1, \operatorname{rank} \begin{pmatrix} \mathbf{A} \\ \mathbf{B} \\ \mathbf{C} \end{pmatrix} = 2 \tag{C.2.2.1}$$

C.2.3. The equation of a line is given by (C.1.5.1)

- C.2.4. The equation of a plane is given by (C.1.1.1)
- C.2.5. The distance from the origin to the line in (C.1.1.1) is given by (C.1.8.1)
- C.2.6. The distance from a point  $\mathbf{P}$  to the line in (C.1.5.1) is given by

$$d = \|\mathbf{A} - \mathbf{P}\|^2 - \frac{\left\{\mathbf{m}^\top (\mathbf{A} - \mathbf{P})\right\}^2}{\|\mathbf{m}\|^2}$$
 (C.2.6.1)

Solution:

$$d(\lambda) = \|\mathbf{A} + \lambda \mathbf{m} - \mathbf{P}\| \tag{C.2.6.2}$$

$$\implies d^{2}(\lambda) = \|\mathbf{A} + \lambda \mathbf{m} - \mathbf{P}\|^{2} \tag{C.2.6.3}$$

which can be simplified to obtain

$$d^{2}(\lambda) = \lambda^{2} \|\mathbf{m}\|^{2} + 2\lambda \mathbf{m}^{\top} (\mathbf{A} - \mathbf{P})$$
$$+ \|\mathbf{A} - \mathbf{P}\|^{2} \quad (C.2.6.4)$$

which is of the form

$$d^{2}(\lambda) = a\lambda^{2} + 2b\lambda + c \tag{C.2.6.5}$$

$$= a \left\{ \left( \lambda + \frac{b}{a} \right)^2 + \left[ \frac{c}{a} - \left( \frac{b}{a} \right)^2 \right] \right\}$$
 (C.2.6.6)

with

$$a = \|\mathbf{m}\|^2, b = \mathbf{m}^{\top} (\mathbf{A} - \mathbf{P}), c = \|\mathbf{A} - \mathbf{P}\|^2$$
 (C.2.6.7)

which can be expressed as From the above,  $d^{2}(\lambda)$  is smallest when upon substituting

from (C.2.6.7)

$$\lambda + \frac{b}{2a} = 0 \implies \lambda = -\frac{b}{2a}$$
 (C.2.6.8)

$$= -\frac{\mathbf{m}^{\top} (\mathbf{A} - \mathbf{P})}{\|\mathbf{m}\|^2}$$
 (C.2.6.9)

and consequently,

$$d_{\min}(\lambda) = a \left(\frac{c}{a} - \left(\frac{b}{a}\right)^2\right) \tag{C.2.6.10}$$

$$= c - \frac{b^2}{a} \tag{C.2.6.11}$$

yielding (C.2.6.1) after substituting from (C.2.6.7).

C.2.7. The distance between the parallel planes (C.1.9.1) is given by (C.1.9.2).

#### C.2.8. The plane

$$\mathbf{n}^{\mathsf{T}}\mathbf{x} = c \tag{C.2.8.1}$$

contains the line

$$\mathbf{x} = \mathbf{A} + \lambda \mathbf{m} \tag{C.2.8.2}$$

if

$$\mathbf{m}^{\mathsf{T}}\mathbf{n} = 0 \tag{C.2.8.3}$$

Solution: Any point on the line (C.2.8.2) should also satisfy (C.2.8.1). Hence,

$$\mathbf{n}^{\top} (\mathbf{A} + \lambda \mathbf{m}) = \mathbf{n}^{\top} \mathbf{A} = c \tag{C.2.8.4}$$

which can be simplified to obtain (C.2.8.3)

C.2.9. The foot of the perpendicular from a point  $\bf P$  to the plane

$$\mathbf{n}^{\top}\mathbf{x} = c \tag{C.2.9.1}$$

is given by

$$\mathbf{x} = \mathbf{P} + \frac{c - \mathbf{n}^{\top} \mathbf{P}}{\|\mathbf{n}\|^2} \mathbf{n}$$
 (C.2.9.2)

**Solution:** The equation of the line perpendicular to the given plane and passing through  $\mathbf{P}$  is

$$\mathbf{x} = \mathbf{P} + \lambda \mathbf{n} \tag{C.2.9.3}$$

From (C.2.12.1), the intersection of the above line with the given plane is (C.2.9.2).

C.2.10. The image of a point  $\mathbf{P}$  with respect to the plane

$$\mathbf{n}^{\mathsf{T}}\mathbf{x} = c \tag{C.2.10.1}$$

is given by

$$\mathbf{R} = \mathbf{P} + 2 \frac{c - \mathbf{n}^{\mathsf{T}} \mathbf{P}}{\|\mathbf{n}\|^2}$$
 (C.2.10.2)

**Solution:** Let  $\mathbf{R}$  be the desired image. Then, subtituting the expression for the foot of the perpendicular from  $\mathbf{P}$  to the given plane using (C.2.9.2),

$$\frac{\mathbf{P} + \mathbf{R}}{2} = \mathbf{P} + \frac{c - \mathbf{n}^{\top} \mathbf{P}}{\|\mathbf{n}\|^{2}}$$
 (C.2.10.3)

C.2.11. Let a plane pass through the points A, B and be perpendicular to the plane

$$\mathbf{n}^{\mathsf{T}}\mathbf{x} = c \tag{C.2.11.1}$$

Then the equation of this plane is given by

$$\mathbf{p}^{\mathsf{T}}\mathbf{x} = 1 \tag{C.2.11.2}$$

where

$$\mathbf{p} = \begin{pmatrix} \mathbf{A} & \mathbf{B} & \mathbf{n} \end{pmatrix}^{-\top} \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 1 \\ 0 \end{pmatrix} \tag{C.2.11.3}$$

**Solution:** From the given information,

$$\mathbf{p}^{\mathsf{T}}\mathbf{A} = d \tag{C.2.11.4}$$

$$\mathbf{p}^{\mathsf{T}}\mathbf{B} = d \tag{C.2.11.5}$$

$$\mathbf{p}^{\mathsf{T}}\mathbf{n} = 0 \tag{C.2.11.6}$$

: the normal vectors to the two planes will also be perpendicular. The system of equations in (C.2.11.6) can be expressed as the matrix equation

$$\begin{pmatrix} \mathbf{A} & \mathbf{B} & \mathbf{n} \end{pmatrix}^{\mathsf{T}} \mathbf{p} = d \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 1 \\ 0 \end{pmatrix} \tag{C.2.11.7}$$

which yields (C.2.11.3) upon normalising with d.

C.2.12. The intersection of the line represented by (C.1.5.1) with the plane represented by (C.1.1.1) is given by

$$\mathbf{x} = \mathbf{A} + \frac{c - \mathbf{n}^{\mathsf{T}} \mathbf{A}}{\mathbf{n}^{\mathsf{T}} \mathbf{m}} \mathbf{m}$$
 (C.2.12.1)

**Solution:** From (C.1.5.1) and (C.1.1.1),

$$\mathbf{x} = \mathbf{A} + \lambda \mathbf{m} \tag{C.2.12.2}$$

$$\mathbf{n}^{\mathsf{T}}\mathbf{x} = c \tag{C.2.12.3}$$

$$\implies \mathbf{n}^{\top} (\mathbf{A} + \lambda \mathbf{m}) = c \tag{C.2.12.4}$$

which can be simplified to obtain

$$\mathbf{n}^{\mathsf{T}}\mathbf{A} + \lambda \mathbf{n}^{\mathsf{T}}\mathbf{m} = c \tag{C.2.12.5}$$

$$\implies \lambda = \frac{c - \mathbf{n}^{\top} \mathbf{A}}{\mathbf{n}^{\top} \mathbf{m}} \tag{C.2.12.6}$$

Substituting the above in (C.2.12.4) yields (C.2.12.1).

C.2.13. The foot of the perpendicular from the point  $\bf P$  to the line represented by (C.1.5.1) is given by

$$\mathbf{x} = \mathbf{A} + \frac{\mathbf{m}^{\top} (\mathbf{P} - \mathbf{A})}{\|\mathbf{m}\|^{2}} \mathbf{m}$$
 (C.2.13.1)

**Solution:** Let the equation of the line be

$$\mathbf{x} = \mathbf{A} + \lambda \mathbf{m} \tag{C.2.13.2}$$

The equation of the plane perpendicular to the given line passing through  $\mathbf{P}$  is given by

$$\mathbf{m}^{\top} (\mathbf{x} - \mathbf{P}) = 0 \tag{C.2.13.3}$$

$$\implies \mathbf{m}^{\mathsf{T}} \mathbf{x} = \mathbf{m}^{\mathsf{T}} \mathbf{P} \tag{C.2.13.4}$$

The desired foot of the perpendicular is the intersection of (C.2.13.2) with (C.2.13.3) which can be obtained from (C.2.12.1) as (C.2.13.1)

C.2.14. The foot of the perpendicular from a point  $\bf P$  to a plane is  $\bf Q$ . The equation of the

plane is given by

$$\left(\mathbf{P} - \mathbf{Q}\right)^{\top} \left(\mathbf{x} - \mathbf{Q}\right) = 0 \tag{C.2.14.1}$$

Solution: The normal vector to the plane is given by

$$\mathbf{n} = \mathbf{P} - \mathbf{Q} \tag{C.2.14.2}$$

Hence, the equation of the plane is (C.2.14.1).

C.2.15. Let A, B, C be points on a plane. The equation of the plane is then given by

$$\begin{pmatrix} \mathbf{A} & \mathbf{B} & \mathbf{C} \end{pmatrix}^{\top} \mathbf{n} = \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 1 \\ 1 \end{pmatrix}$$
 (C.2.15.1)

**Solution:** Let the equation of the plane be

$$\mathbf{n}^{\mathsf{T}}\mathbf{x} = 1 \tag{C.2.15.2}$$

Then

$$\mathbf{n}^{\mathsf{T}}\mathbf{A} = 1\tag{C.2.15.3}$$

$$\mathbf{n}^{\mathsf{T}}\mathbf{B} = 1\tag{C.2.15.4}$$

$$\mathbf{n}^{\mathsf{T}}\mathbf{C} = 1 \tag{C.2.15.5}$$

which can be combined to obtain (C.2.15.1).

C.2.16. (Parallelogram Law) Let **A**, **B**, **D** be three vertices of a parallelogram. Then the vertex

C is given by

$$\mathbf{C} = \mathbf{B} + \mathbf{C} - \mathbf{A} \tag{C.2.16.1}$$

**Solution:** Shifting **A** to the origin, we obtain a parallelogram with corresponding vertices

$$\mathbf{0}, \mathbf{B} - \mathbf{A}, \mathbf{D} - \mathbf{A} \tag{C.2.16.2}$$

The fourth vertex of this parallelogram is then obtained as

$$(B - A) + (D - A) = D + B - 2A$$
 (C.2.16.3)

Shifting the origin to  $\mathbf{A}$ , the fourth vertex is obtained as

$$\mathbf{C} = \mathbf{D} + \mathbf{B} - 2\mathbf{A} + \mathbf{A} \tag{C.2.16.4}$$

$$= \mathbf{D} + \mathbf{B} - \mathbf{A} \tag{C.2.16.5}$$

C.2.17. (Affine Transformation) Let  $\mathbf{A}, \mathbf{C}$ , be opposite vertices of a square. The other two points can be obtained as

$$\mathbf{B} = \frac{\|\mathbf{A} - \mathbf{C}\|}{\sqrt{2}} \mathbf{P} \mathbf{e}_1 + \mathbf{A}$$
 (C.2.17.1)

$$\mathbf{D} = \frac{\|\mathbf{A} - \mathbf{C}\|}{\sqrt{2}} \mathbf{P} \mathbf{e}_2 + \mathbf{A}$$
 (C.2.17.2)

where

$$\mathbf{P} = \begin{pmatrix} \cos\left(\theta - \frac{\pi}{4}\right) & \sin\left(\theta - \frac{\pi}{4}\right) \\ \sin\left(\theta - \frac{\pi}{4}\right) & \cos\left(\theta - \frac{\pi}{4}\right) \end{pmatrix}$$
 (C.2.17.3)

 $\quad \text{and} \quad$ 

$$\cos \theta = \frac{(\mathbf{C} - \mathbf{A})^{\top} \mathbf{e}_{1}}{\|\mathbf{A} - \mathbf{C}\| \|\mathbf{e}_{1}\|}$$
(C.2.17.4)

## Appendix D

# Quadratic Forms

## D.1. Conic equation

D.1.1. Let  $\mathbf{q}$  be a point such that the ratio of its distance from a fixed point  $\mathbf{F}$  and the distance (d) from a fixed line

$$L: \mathbf{n}^{\top} \mathbf{x} = c \tag{D.1.1.1}$$

is constant, given by

$$\frac{\|\mathbf{q} - \mathbf{F}\|}{d} = e \tag{D.1.1.2}$$

The locus of  $\mathbf{q}$  is known as a conic section. The line L is known as the directrix and the point  $\mathbf{F}$  is the focus. e is defined to be the eccentricity of the conic.

- (a) For e = 1, the conic is a parabola
- (b) For e < 1, the conic is an ellipse
- (c) For e > 1, the conic is a hyperbola

D.1.2. The equation of a conic with directrix  $\mathbf{n}^{\top}\mathbf{x} = c$ , eccentricity e and focus  $\mathbf{F}$  is given by

$$g(\mathbf{x}) = \mathbf{x}^{\mathsf{T}} \mathbf{V} \mathbf{x} + 2\mathbf{u}^{\mathsf{T}} \mathbf{x} + f = 0$$
 (D.1.2.1)

where

$$\mathbf{V} = \|\mathbf{n}\|^2 \mathbf{I} - e^2 \mathbf{n} \mathbf{n}^\top, \tag{D.1.2.2}$$

$$\mathbf{u} = ce^2 \mathbf{n} - \|\mathbf{n}\|^2 \mathbf{F},\tag{D.1.2.3}$$

$$f = \|\mathbf{n}\|^2 \|\mathbf{F}\|^2 - c^2 e^2$$
 (D.1.2.4)

*Proof.* Using Definition D.1.1 and Lemma C.1.7.1, for any point  $\mathbf{x}$  on the conic,

$$\|\mathbf{x} - \mathbf{F}\|^2 = e^2 \frac{\left(\mathbf{n}^\top \mathbf{x} - c\right)^2}{\|\mathbf{n}\|^2}$$
 (D.1.2.5)

$$\implies \|\mathbf{n}\|^2 (\mathbf{x} - \mathbf{F})^\top (\mathbf{x} - \mathbf{F}) = e^2 (\mathbf{n}^\top \mathbf{x} - c)^2$$
(D.1.2.6)

$$\implies \|\mathbf{n}\|^2 \left(\mathbf{x}^\top \mathbf{x} - 2\mathbf{F}^\top \mathbf{x} + \|\mathbf{F}\|^2\right) = e^2 \left(c^2 + \left(\mathbf{n}^\top \mathbf{x}\right)^2 - 2c\mathbf{n}^\top \mathbf{x}\right)$$
(D.1.2.7)

$$= e^{2} \left( c^{2} + \left( \mathbf{x}^{\top} \mathbf{n} \mathbf{n}^{\top} \mathbf{x} \right) - 2c \mathbf{n}^{\top} \mathbf{x} \right) \qquad (D.1.2.8)$$

which can be expressed as (D.1.2.1) after simplification.

D.1.3. The eccentricity, directrices and foci of (D.1.2.1) are given by

$$e = \sqrt{1 - \frac{\lambda_1}{\lambda_2}} \tag{D.1.3.1}$$

$$\mathbf{n} = \sqrt{\lambda_2} \mathbf{p}_1$$

$$c = \begin{cases} \frac{e\mathbf{u}^{\top} \mathbf{n} \pm \sqrt{e^{2} (\mathbf{u}^{\top} \mathbf{n})^{2} - \lambda_{2} (e^{2} - 1) (\|\mathbf{u}\|^{2} - \lambda_{2} f)}}{\lambda_{2} e(e^{2} - 1)} & e \neq 1 \\ \frac{\|\mathbf{u}\|^{2} - \lambda_{2} f}{2\mathbf{u}^{\top} \mathbf{n}} & e = 1 \end{cases}$$
(D.1.3.2)

$$\mathbf{F} = \frac{ce^2\mathbf{n} - \mathbf{u}}{\lambda_2} \tag{D.1.3.3}$$

*Proof.* From (D.1.2.2), using the fact that **V** is symmetric with  $\mathbf{V} = \mathbf{V}^{\top}$ ,

$$\mathbf{V}^{\top}\mathbf{V} = \left(\|\mathbf{n}\|^{2}\mathbf{I} - e^{2}\mathbf{n}\mathbf{n}^{\top}\right)^{\top} \left(\|\mathbf{n}\|^{2}\mathbf{I} - e^{2}\mathbf{n}\mathbf{n}^{\top}\right)$$
(D.1.3.4)

$$\implies \mathbf{V}^2 = \|\mathbf{n}\|^4 \mathbf{I} + e^4 \mathbf{n} \mathbf{n}^\top \mathbf{n} \mathbf{n}^\top - 2e^2 \|\mathbf{n}\|^2 \mathbf{n} \mathbf{n}^\top$$
 (D.1.3.5)

$$= \|\mathbf{n}\|^{4} \mathbf{I} + e^{4} \|\mathbf{n}\|^{2} \mathbf{n} \mathbf{n}^{\top} - 2e^{2} \|\mathbf{n}\|^{2} \mathbf{n} \mathbf{n}^{\top}$$
 (D.1.3.6)

$$= \|\mathbf{n}\|^4 \mathbf{I} + e^2 (e^2 - 2) \|\mathbf{n}\|^2 \mathbf{n} \mathbf{n}^{\top}$$
 (D.1.3.7)

$$= \|\mathbf{n}\|^{4} \mathbf{I} + (e^{2} - 2) \|\mathbf{n}\|^{2} (\|\mathbf{n}\|^{2} \mathbf{I} - \mathbf{V})$$
 (D.1.3.8)

which can be expressed as

$$\mathbf{V}^{2} + (e^{2} - 2) \|\mathbf{n}\|^{2} \mathbf{V} - (e^{2} - 1) \|\mathbf{n}\|^{4} \mathbf{I} = 0$$
 (D.1.3.9)

Using the Cayley-Hamilton theorem, (D.1.3.9) results in the characteristic equation,

$$\lambda^{2} - (2 - e^{2}) \|\mathbf{n}\|^{2} \lambda + (1 - e^{2}) \|\mathbf{n}\|^{4} = 0$$
 (D.1.3.10)

which can be expressed as

$$\left(\frac{\lambda}{\|\mathbf{n}\|^2}\right)^2 - (2 - e^2)\left(\frac{\lambda}{\|\mathbf{n}\|^2}\right) + (1 - e^2) = 0$$
(D.1.3.11)

$$\implies \frac{\lambda}{\|\mathbf{n}\|^2} = 1 - e^2, 1 \tag{D.1.3.12}$$

or, 
$$\lambda_2 = ||\mathbf{n}||^2$$
,  $\lambda_1 = (1 - e^2) \lambda_2$  (D.1.3.13)

From (D.1.3.13), the eccentricity of (D.1.2.1) is given by (D.1.3.1). Multiplying both sides of (D.1.2.2) by  $\mathbf{n}$ ,

$$\mathbf{V}\mathbf{n} = \|\mathbf{n}\|^2 \,\mathbf{n} - e^2 \mathbf{n} \mathbf{n}^{\mathsf{T}} \mathbf{n} \tag{D.1.3.14}$$

$$= \|\mathbf{n}\|^2 (1 - e^2) \mathbf{n}$$
 (D.1.3.15)

$$= \lambda_1 \mathbf{n} \tag{D.1.3.16}$$

(D.1.3.17)

from (D.1.3.13). Thus,  $\lambda_1$  is the corresponding eigenvalue for **n**. From (B.5.6.3) and (D.1.3.17), this implies that

$$\mathbf{p}_1 = \frac{\mathbf{n}}{\|\mathbf{n}\|} \tag{D.1.3.18}$$

or, 
$$\mathbf{n} = \|\mathbf{n}\| \, \mathbf{p}_1 = \sqrt{\lambda_2} \mathbf{p}_1$$
 (D.1.3.19)

from (D.1.3.13). From (D.1.2.3) and (D.1.3.13),

$$\mathbf{F} = \frac{ce^2\mathbf{n} - \mathbf{u}}{\lambda_2} \tag{D.1.3.20}$$

$$\implies \|\mathbf{F}\|^2 = \frac{\left(ce^2\mathbf{n} - \mathbf{u}\right)^{\top} \left(ce^2\mathbf{n} - \mathbf{u}\right)}{\lambda_2^2} \tag{D.1.3.21}$$

$$\implies \lambda_2^2 \|\mathbf{F}\|^2 = c^2 e^4 \lambda_2 - 2ce^2 \mathbf{u}^\top \mathbf{n} + \|\mathbf{u}\|^2$$
 (D.1.3.22)

Also, (D.1.2.4) can be expressed as

$$\lambda_2 \|\mathbf{F}\|^2 = f + c^2 e^2$$
 (D.1.3.23)

From (D.1.3.22) and (D.1.3.23),

$$c^{2}e^{4}\lambda_{2} - 2ce^{2}\mathbf{u}^{\top}\mathbf{n} + \|\mathbf{u}\|^{2} = \lambda_{2}(f + c^{2}e^{2})$$
 (D.1.3.24)

$$\implies \lambda_2 e^2 (e^2 - 1) c^2 - 2ce^2 \mathbf{u}^{\mathsf{T}} \mathbf{n} + ||\mathbf{u}||^2 - \lambda_2 f = 0$$
 (D.1.3.25)

yielding (D.1.3.3). 
$$\Box$$

D.1.4. (D.1.2.1) represents

- (a) a parabola for  $\left|\mathbf{V}\right|=0$ ,
- (b) ellipse for  $\left| \mathbf{V} \right| > 0$  and
- (c) hyperbola for  $\left|\mathbf{V}\right| < 0$ .

Proof. From (D.1.3.1),

$$\frac{\lambda_1}{\lambda_2} = 1 - e^2 \tag{D.1.4.1}$$

Also,

$$\left|\mathbf{V}\right| = \lambda_1 \lambda_2 \tag{D.1.4.2}$$

yielding Table D.1.4.2

Eccentricity	Conic	Eigenvalue	Determinant
e = 1	Parabola	$\lambda_1 = 0$	$ \mathbf{v}  = 0$
e < 1	Ellipse	$\lambda_1 > 0, \lambda_2 > 0$	$ \mathbf{V}  > 0$
e > 1	Hyperbola	$\lambda_1 < 0, \lambda_2 > 0$	$ \mathbf{V}  < 0$

Table D.1.4.2:

## D.2. Circles

D.2.1. The equation of a circle is given by

$$\|\mathbf{x}\|^2 + 2\mathbf{u}^{\mathsf{T}}\mathbf{x} + f = 0 \tag{D.2.1.1}$$

D.2.2. For a circle with centre  $\mathbf{c}$  and radius r,

$$\mathbf{u} = -\mathbf{c}, f = \|\mathbf{u}\|^2 - r^2$$
 (D.2.2.1)

D.2.3. Any point  $\mathbf{x}$  on a circle can be expressed as

$$\mathbf{x} = \mathbf{c} + r \begin{pmatrix} \cos \theta \\ \sin \theta \end{pmatrix}. \tag{D.2.3.1}$$

D.2.4. The equation of the common chord of intersection of two circles is given by

$$\mathbf{u}_1^{\mathsf{T}}\mathbf{x} - \mathbf{u}_2^{\mathsf{T}}\mathbf{x} + f_1 - f_2 = 0 \tag{D.2.4.1}$$

D.2.5. The line joining the centre of a circle to the mid point of any chord is perpendicular to the chord.

*Proof.* Let AB be any chord of a circle with centre  $\mathbf{O} = \mathbf{0}$  and radius r. Then,

$$\|\mathbf{A}\|^2 = \|\mathbf{B}\|^2 = r^2$$
 (D.2.5.1)

$$\implies \|\mathbf{A}\|^2 - \|\mathbf{B}\|^2 = \mathbf{0} \tag{D.2.5.2}$$

or, 
$$(\mathbf{A} - \mathbf{B})^{\mathsf{T}} (\mathbf{A} + \mathbf{B}) = \mathbf{0}$$
 (D.2.5.3)

which can be expressed as

$$(\mathbf{A} - \mathbf{B})^{\mathsf{T}} \left( \frac{\mathbf{A} + \mathbf{B}}{2} - \mathbf{O} \right) = \mathbf{0}$$
 (D.2.5.4)

D.2.6. Let

$$\mathbf{A} = \begin{pmatrix} \cos \theta_1 \\ \sin \theta_1 \end{pmatrix}, \mathbf{B} = \begin{pmatrix} \cos \theta_2 \\ \sin \theta_2 \end{pmatrix}, \tag{D.2.6.1}$$

be points on a unit circle with centre **O** at the origin. Then

$$\cos AOB = \mathbf{A}^{\top}\mathbf{B} \tag{D.2.6.2}$$

D.2.7. Let

$$\mathbf{A} = \begin{pmatrix} \cos \theta_1 \\ \sin \theta_1 \end{pmatrix}, \mathbf{B} = \begin{pmatrix} \cos \theta_2 \\ \sin \theta_2 \end{pmatrix}, \mathbf{C} = \begin{pmatrix} \cos \theta \\ \sin \theta \end{pmatrix}, \tag{D.2.7.1}$$

be points on a unit circle. Then

$$\cos ACB = \frac{(\mathbf{C} - \mathbf{A})^{\top} (\mathbf{C} - \mathbf{B})}{\|\mathbf{C} - \mathbf{A}\| \|\mathbf{C} - \mathbf{B}\|}$$
(D.2.7.2)

$$= \cos\left(\frac{\theta_1 - \theta_2}{2}\right) \tag{D.2.7.3}$$

Proof. Since

$$(\mathbf{C} - \mathbf{A})^{\top} (\mathbf{C} - \mathbf{B}) = \|\mathbf{C}\|^{2} - \mathbf{C}^{\top} (\mathbf{A} + \mathbf{B}) + \mathbf{A}^{\top} \mathbf{B}$$

$$= 1 - \cos(\theta - \theta_{1}) - \cos(\theta - \theta_{2}) + \cos(\theta_{1} - \theta_{2})$$

$$= 2\cos^{2} \left(\frac{\theta_{1} - \theta_{2}}{2}\right) - 2\cos\left(\frac{\theta_{1} - \theta_{2}}{2}\right) \cos\left(\theta - \frac{\theta_{1} + \theta_{2}}{2}\right)$$

$$= 4\cos\left(\frac{\theta_{1} - \theta_{2}}{2}\right) \sin\left(\frac{\theta - \theta_{1}}{2}\right) \sin\left(\frac{\theta - \theta_{2}}{2}\right),$$

$$(D.2.7.6)$$

and

$$\|\mathbf{C} - \mathbf{A}\|^2 = \|\mathbf{C}\|^2 + \|\mathbf{A}\|^2 - 2\mathbf{C}^{\mathsf{T}}\mathbf{A},$$
 (D.2.7.8)

$$=4\sin^2\left(\frac{\theta-\theta_1}{2}\right),\tag{D.2.7.9}$$

$$\|\mathbf{C} - \mathbf{B}\|^2 = \|\mathbf{C}\|^2 + \|\mathbf{B}\|^2 - 2\mathbf{C}^{\mathsf{T}}\mathbf{B},$$
 (D.2.7.10)

$$=4\sin^2\left(\frac{\theta-\theta_2}{2}\right),\tag{D.2.7.11}$$

(D.2.7.2) can be expressed as

$$\frac{\cos\left(\frac{\theta_1 - \theta_2}{2}\right)\sin\left(\frac{\theta - \theta_1}{2}\right)\sin\left(\frac{\theta - \theta_2}{2}\right)}{\sin\left(\frac{\theta - \theta_1}{2}\right)\sin\left(\frac{\theta - \theta_1}{2}\right)}$$
(D.2.7.12)

yielding 
$$(D.2.7.3)$$

D.2.8. From (D.2.6.2) and (D.2.7.3),

$$\angle AOB = 2\angle AOC$$
 (D.2.8.1)

#### D.3. Standard Form

D.3.1. Using the affine transformation in (B.5.5.1), the conic in (D.1.2.1) can be expressed in standard form as

$$\mathbf{y}^{\top} \left( \frac{\mathbf{D}}{f_0} \right) \mathbf{y} = 1 \qquad |\mathbf{V}| \neq 0 \qquad (D.3.1.1)$$

$$\mathbf{y}^{\mathsf{T}}\mathbf{D}\mathbf{y} = -\eta \mathbf{e}_{1}^{\mathsf{T}}\mathbf{y} \qquad |\mathbf{V}| = 0 \qquad (D.3.1.2)$$

where

$$f_0 = \mathbf{u}^\top \mathbf{V}^{-1} \mathbf{u} - f \neq 0 \tag{D.3.1.3}$$

$$\eta = 2\mathbf{u}^{\mathsf{T}}\mathbf{p}_1\tag{D.3.1.4}$$

$$\mathbf{e}_1 = \begin{pmatrix} 1\\0 \end{pmatrix} \tag{D.3.1.5}$$

*Proof.* Using (B.5.5.1) (D.1.2.1) can be expressed as

$$(\mathbf{P}\mathbf{y} + \mathbf{c})^{\top} \mathbf{V} (\mathbf{P}\mathbf{y} + \mathbf{c}) + 2\mathbf{u}^{\top} (\mathbf{P}\mathbf{y} + \mathbf{c}) + f = 0,$$
 (D.3.1.6)

yielding

$$\mathbf{y}^{\mathsf{T}} \mathbf{P}^{\mathsf{T}} \mathbf{V} \mathbf{P} \mathbf{y} + 2 (\mathbf{V} \mathbf{c} + \mathbf{u})^{\mathsf{T}} \mathbf{P} \mathbf{y} + \mathbf{c}^{\mathsf{T}} \mathbf{V} \mathbf{c} + 2 \mathbf{u}^{\mathsf{T}} \mathbf{c} + f = 0$$
 (D.3.1.7)

From (D.3.1.7) and (B.5.6.1),

$$\mathbf{y}^{\mathsf{T}}\mathbf{D}\mathbf{y} + 2(\mathbf{V}\mathbf{c} + \mathbf{u})^{\mathsf{T}}\mathbf{P}\mathbf{y} + \mathbf{c}^{\mathsf{T}}(\mathbf{V}\mathbf{c} + \mathbf{u}) + \mathbf{u}^{\mathsf{T}}\mathbf{c} + f = 0$$
 (D.3.1.8)

When  $\mathbf{V}^{-1}$  exists, choosing

$$\mathbf{Vc} + \mathbf{u} = \mathbf{0}, \quad \text{or, } \mathbf{c} = -\mathbf{V}^{-1}\mathbf{u},$$
 (D.3.1.9)

and substituting (D.3.1.9) in (D.3.1.8) yields (D.3.1.1). When  $|\mathbf{V}|=0, \lambda_1=0$  and

$$\mathbf{V}\mathbf{p}_1 = 0, \mathbf{V}\mathbf{p}_2 = \lambda_2 \mathbf{p}_2. \tag{D.3.1.10}$$

where  $\mathbf{p}_1, \mathbf{p}_2$  are the eigenvectors of  $\mathbf{V}$  such that (B.5.6.1)

$$\mathbf{P} = \begin{pmatrix} \mathbf{p}_1 & \mathbf{p}_2 \end{pmatrix}, \tag{D.3.1.11}$$

Substituting (D.3.1.11) in (D.3.1.8),

$$\mathbf{y}^{\top} \mathbf{D} \mathbf{y} + 2 \left( \mathbf{c}^{\top} \mathbf{V} + \mathbf{u}^{\top} \right) \left( \mathbf{p}_{1} \quad \mathbf{p}_{2} \right) \mathbf{y} + \mathbf{c}^{\top} \left( \mathbf{V} \mathbf{c} + \mathbf{u} \right) + \mathbf{u}^{\top} \mathbf{c} + f = 0$$

$$(D.3.1.12)$$

$$\Rightarrow \mathbf{y}^{\top} \mathbf{D} \mathbf{y} + 2 \left( \left( \mathbf{c}^{\top} \mathbf{V} + \mathbf{u}^{\top} \right) \mathbf{p}_{1} \left( \mathbf{c}^{\top} \mathbf{V} + \mathbf{u}^{\top} \right) \mathbf{p}_{2} \right) \mathbf{y} + \mathbf{c}^{\top} \left( \mathbf{V} \mathbf{c} + \mathbf{u} \right) + \mathbf{u}^{\top} \mathbf{c} + f = 0$$

$$(D.3.1.13)$$

$$\Rightarrow \mathbf{y}^{\top} \mathbf{D} \mathbf{y} + 2 \left( \mathbf{u}^{\top} \mathbf{p}_{1} \quad \left( \lambda_{2} \mathbf{c}^{\top} + \mathbf{u}^{\top} \right) \mathbf{p}_{2} \right) \mathbf{y} + \mathbf{c}^{\top} \left( \mathbf{V} \mathbf{c} + \mathbf{u} \right) + \mathbf{u}^{\top} \mathbf{c} + f = 0$$

$$(D.3.1.14)$$

upon substituting from (D.3.1.10) yielding

$$\lambda_2 y_2^2 + 2 \left( \mathbf{u}^\top \mathbf{p}_1 \right) y_1 + 2 y_2 \left( \lambda_2 \mathbf{c} + \mathbf{u} \right)^\top \mathbf{p}_2 + \mathbf{c}^\top \left( \mathbf{V} \mathbf{c} + \mathbf{u} \right) + \mathbf{u}^\top \mathbf{c} + f = 0 \quad (D.3.1.15)$$

Thus, (D.3.1.15) can be expressed as (D.3.1.2) by choosing

$$\eta = 2\mathbf{u}^{\mathsf{T}}\mathbf{p}_1 \tag{D.3.1.16}$$

and  $\mathbf{c}$  in (D.3.1.8) such that

$$2\mathbf{P}^{\top}(\mathbf{V}\mathbf{c} + \mathbf{u}) = \eta \begin{pmatrix} 1\\0 \end{pmatrix}$$
 (D.3.1.17)

$$\mathbf{c}^{\top} (\mathbf{V}\mathbf{c} + \mathbf{u}) + \mathbf{u}^{\top}\mathbf{c} + f = 0$$
 (D.3.1.18)

 $\because \mathbf{P}^{\top}\mathbf{P} = \mathbf{I},$  multiplying (D.3.1.17) by  $\mathbf{P}$  yields

$$(\mathbf{Vc} + \mathbf{u}) = \frac{\eta}{2} \mathbf{p}_1, \tag{D.3.1.19}$$

which, upon substituting in (D.3.1.18) results in

$$\frac{\eta}{2} \mathbf{c}^{\mathsf{T}} \mathbf{p}_1 + \mathbf{u}^{\mathsf{T}} \mathbf{c} + f = 0 \tag{D.3.1.20}$$

(D.3.1.19) and (D.3.1.20) can be clubbed together to obtain (E.2.1.2).

#### D.3.2. For the standard conic,

$$\mathbf{P} = \mathbf{I} \tag{D.3.2.1}$$

$$\mathbf{u} = \begin{cases} 0 & e \neq 1 \\ \frac{\eta}{2} \mathbf{e}_1 & e = 1 \end{cases}$$
 (D.3.2.2)

$$\mathbf{u} = \begin{cases} 0 & e \neq 1 \\ \frac{\eta}{2} \mathbf{e}_1 & e = 1 \end{cases}$$

$$\lambda_1 \begin{cases} = 0 & e = 1 \\ \neq 0 & e \neq 1 \end{cases}$$
(D.3.2.2)

where

$$\mathbf{I} = \begin{pmatrix} \mathbf{e}_1 & \mathbf{e}_2 \end{pmatrix} \tag{D.3.2.4}$$

is the identity matrix.

(a) The directrices for the standard conic are given by

$$\mathbf{e}_{1}^{\mathsf{T}}\mathbf{y} = \pm \frac{1}{e} \sqrt{\frac{|f_{0}|}{\lambda_{2} (1 - e^{2})}}$$
  $e \neq 1$  (D.3.3.1)

$$\mathbf{e}_1^{\mathsf{T}} \mathbf{y} = \frac{\eta}{2\lambda_2} \tag{D.3.3.2}$$

(b) The foci of the standard ellipse and hyperbola are given by

$$\mathbf{F} = \begin{cases} \pm e\sqrt{\frac{|f_0|}{\lambda_2(1-e^2)}} \mathbf{e}_1 & e \neq 1\\ -\frac{\eta}{4\lambda_2} \mathbf{e}_1 & e = 1 \end{cases}$$
(D.3.3.3)

*Proof.* (a) For the standard hyperbola/ellipse in (D.3.1.1), from (D.3.2.1), (D.1.3.2) and (D.3.2.2),

$$\mathbf{n} = \sqrt{\frac{\lambda_2}{f_0}} \mathbf{e}_1 \tag{D.3.3.4}$$

$$c = \pm \frac{\sqrt{-\frac{\lambda_2}{f_0} (e^2 - 1) \left(\frac{\lambda_2}{f_0}\right)}}{\frac{\lambda_2}{f_0} e (e^2 - 1)}$$
 (D.3.3.5)

$$= \pm \frac{1}{e\sqrt{1 - e^2}} \tag{D.3.3.6}$$

yielding (D.3.3.1) upon substituting from (D.1.3.1) and simplifying. For the standard parabola in (D.3.1.2), from (D.3.2.1), (D.1.3.2) and (D.3.2.2), noting that f = 0,

$$\mathbf{n} = \sqrt{\lambda_2} \mathbf{e}_1 \tag{D.3.3.7}$$

$$c = \frac{\left\|\frac{\eta}{2}\mathbf{e}_1\right\|^2}{2\left(\frac{\eta}{2}\right)\left(\mathbf{e}_1\right)^{\top}\mathbf{n}}$$
(D.3.3.8)

(D.3.3.9)

$$=\frac{\eta}{4\sqrt{\lambda_2}}\tag{D.3.3.10}$$

yielding (D.3.3.2).

(b) For the standard ellipse/hyperbola, substituting from (D.3.3.6), (D.3.3.4), (D.3.2.2) and (D.1.3.1) in (D.1.3.3),

$$\mathbf{F} = \pm \frac{\left(\frac{1}{e\sqrt{1-e^2}}\right)\left(e^2\right)\sqrt{\frac{\lambda_2}{f_0}}\mathbf{e}_1}{\frac{\lambda_2}{f_0}}$$
(D.3.3.11)

yielding (D.3.3.3) after simplification. For the standard parabola, substituting from (D.3.3.10), (D.3.3.7), (D.3.2.2) and (D.1.3.1) in (D.1.3.3),

$$\mathbf{F} = \frac{\left(\frac{\eta}{4\sqrt{\lambda_2}}\right)\sqrt{\lambda_2}\mathbf{e}_1 - \frac{\eta}{2}\mathbf{e}_1}{\lambda_2} \tag{D.3.3.12}$$

(D.3.3.13)

yielding (D.3.3.3) after simplification.

## Appendix E

## **Conic Parameters**

#### E.1. Standard Form

- E.1.1. The center of the standard ellipse/hyperbola, defined to be the mid point of the line joining the foci, is the origin.
- E.1.2. The principal (major) axis of the standard ellipse/hyperbola, defined to be the line joining the two foci is the x-axis.

*Proof.* From (D.3.3.3), it is obvious that the line joining the foci passes through the origin. Also, the direction vector of this line is  $\mathbf{e}_1$ . Thus, the principal axis is the x-axis.

- E.1.3. The minor axis of the standard ellipse/hyperbola, defined to be the line orthogonal to the x-axis is the y-axis.
- E.1.4. The axis of symmetry of the standard parabola, defined to be the line perpendicular to the directrix and passing through the focus, is the x- axis.

*Proof.* From (D.3.3.7) and (D.3.3.3), the axis of the parabola can be expressed using

(C.1.2.1) as

$$\mathbf{e}_{2}^{\top} \left( \mathbf{y} + \frac{\eta}{4\lambda_{2}} \mathbf{e}_{1} \right) = 0 \tag{E.1.4.1}$$

$$\implies \mathbf{e}_2^{\mathsf{T}} \mathbf{y} = 0, \tag{E.1.4.2}$$

which is the equation of the x-axis.

E.1.5. The point where the parabola intersects its axis of symmetry is called the vertex. For the standard parabola, the vertex is the origin.

*Proof.* (E.1.4.2) can be expressed as

$$\mathbf{y} = \alpha \mathbf{e}_1, \tag{E.1.5.1}$$

using (C.1.2.1). Substituting (E.1.5.1) in (D.3.1.2),

$$\alpha^2 \mathbf{e}_1^{\mathsf{T}} \mathbf{D} \mathbf{e}_1 = -\eta \alpha \mathbf{e}_1^{\mathsf{T}} \mathbf{e}_1 \tag{E.1.5.2}$$

$$\implies \alpha = 0, \text{ or, } \mathbf{y} = \mathbf{0}.$$
 (E.1.5.3)

E.1.6. The <u>focal length</u> of the standard parabola, , defined to be the distance between the vertex and the focus, measured along the axis of symmetry, is  $\left|\frac{\eta}{4\lambda_2}\right|$ 

#### E.2. Quadratic Form

E.2.1. The center/vertex of a conic section are given by

$$\mathbf{c} = -\mathbf{V}^{-1}\mathbf{u} \qquad \qquad |\mathbf{V}| \neq 0 \tag{E.2.1.1}$$

$$\begin{pmatrix} \mathbf{u}^{\top} + \frac{\eta}{2} \mathbf{p}_{1}^{\top} \\ \mathbf{v} \end{pmatrix} \mathbf{c} = \begin{pmatrix} -f \\ \frac{\eta}{2} \mathbf{p}_{1} - \mathbf{u} \end{pmatrix} \qquad |\mathbf{V}| = 0$$
 (E.2.1.2)

*Proof.* In (B.5.5.1), substituting  $\mathbf{y} = \mathbf{0}$ , the center/vertex for the quadratic form is obtained as

$$\mathbf{x} = \mathbf{c},\tag{E.2.1.3}$$

where  $\mathbf{c}$  is derived as (E.2.1.1) and (E.2.1.2) in Appendix D.3.1.

E.2.2. The equation of the minor and major axes for the ellipse/hyperbola are respectively given by

$$\mathbf{p}_i^{\mathsf{T}}(\mathbf{x} - \mathbf{c}) = 0, i = 1, 2 \tag{E.2.2.1}$$

The axis of symmetry for the parabola is also given by (E.2.2.1).

*Proof.* From (E.1.2), the major/symmetry axis for the hyperbola/ellipse/parabola can be expressed using (B.5.5.1) as

$$\mathbf{e}_{2}^{\mathsf{T}}\mathbf{P}^{\mathsf{T}}\left(\mathbf{x}-\mathbf{c}\right) = 0 \tag{E.2.2.2}$$

$$\implies (\mathbf{Pe}_2)^{\top} (\mathbf{x} - \mathbf{c}) = 0 \tag{E.2.2.3}$$

yielding (E.2.2.1), and the proof for the minor axis is similar.  $\Box$ 

## Appendix F

# Conic Lines

## F.1. Pair of Straight Lines

F.1.1. The asymptotes of the hyperbola in (D.3.1.1), defined to be the lines that do not intersect the hyperbola, are given by

$$\left(\sqrt{|\lambda_1|} \pm \sqrt{|\lambda_2|}\right) \mathbf{y} = 0 \tag{F.1.1.1}$$

*Proof.* From (D.3.1.1), it is obvious that the pair of lines represented by

$$\mathbf{y}^{\mathsf{T}}\mathbf{D}\mathbf{y} = 0 \tag{F.1.1.2}$$

do not intersect the conic

$$\mathbf{y}^{\mathsf{T}}\mathbf{D}\mathbf{y} = f_0 \tag{F.1.1.3}$$

Thus, (F.1.1.2) represents the asysmptotes of the hyperbola in (D.3.1.1) and can be expressed as

$$\lambda_1 y_1^2 + \lambda_2 y_1^2 = 0, (F.1.1.4)$$

which can then be simplified to obtain (F.1.1.1).

F.1.2. (D.1.2.1) represents a pair of straight lines if

$$\mathbf{u}^{\mathsf{T}}\mathbf{V}^{-1}\mathbf{u} - f = 0 \tag{F.1.2.1}$$

F.1.3. (D.1.2.1) represents a pair of straight lines if the matrix

$$\begin{pmatrix} \mathbf{V} & \mathbf{u} \\ \mathbf{u} & f \end{pmatrix} \tag{F.1.3.1}$$

is singular.

Proof. Let

$$\begin{pmatrix} \mathbf{V} & \mathbf{u} \\ \mathbf{u} & f \end{pmatrix} \mathbf{x} = \mathbf{0} \tag{F.1.3.2}$$

Expressing

$$\mathbf{x} = \begin{pmatrix} \mathbf{y} \\ y_3 \end{pmatrix}, \tag{F.1.3.3}$$

$$\begin{pmatrix} \mathbf{V} & \mathbf{u} \\ \mathbf{u}^{\top} & f \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} \mathbf{y} \\ y_3 \end{pmatrix} = \mathbf{0}$$
 (F.1.3.4)

$$\implies \mathbf{V}\mathbf{y} + y_3\mathbf{u} = \mathbf{0}$$
 and (F.1.3.5)

$$\mathbf{u}^{\mathsf{T}}\mathbf{y} + fy_3 = 0 \tag{F.1.3.6}$$

From (F.1.3.5) we obtain,

$$\mathbf{y}^{\mathsf{T}}\mathbf{V}\mathbf{y} + y_3\mathbf{y}^{\mathsf{T}}\mathbf{u} = \mathbf{0} \tag{F.1.3.7}$$

$$\implies \mathbf{y}^{\mathsf{T}} \mathbf{V} \mathbf{y} + y_3 \mathbf{u}^{\mathsf{T}} \mathbf{y} = \mathbf{0}$$
 (F.1.3.8)

F.1.4. Using the affine transformation, (F.1.1.1) can be expressed as the lines

$$\left(\sqrt{|\lambda_1|} \pm \sqrt{|\lambda_2|}\right) \mathbf{P}^{\top} (\mathbf{x} - \mathbf{c}) = 0$$
 (F.1.4.1)

F.1.5. The angle between the asymptotes can be expressed as

$$\cos \theta = \frac{|\lambda_1| - |\lambda_2|}{|\lambda_1| + |\lambda_2|} \tag{F.1.5.1}$$

*Proof.* The normal vectors of the lines in (F.1.4.1) are

$$\mathbf{n}_{1} = \mathbf{P} \begin{pmatrix} \sqrt{|\lambda_{1}|} \\ \sqrt{|\lambda_{2}|} \end{pmatrix}$$

$$\mathbf{n}_{2} = \mathbf{P} \begin{pmatrix} \sqrt{|\lambda_{1}|} \\ -\sqrt{|\lambda_{2}|} \end{pmatrix}$$
(F.1.5.2)

The angle between the asymptotes is given by

$$\cos \theta = \frac{\mathbf{n_1}^{\top} \mathbf{n_2}}{\|\mathbf{n_1}\| \|\mathbf{n_2}\|}$$
 (F.1.5.3)

The orthogonal matrix **P** preserves the norm, i.e.

$$\|\mathbf{n_1}\| = \left\| \mathbf{P} \begin{pmatrix} \sqrt{|\lambda_1|} \\ \sqrt{|\lambda_2|} \end{pmatrix} \right\| = \left\| \begin{pmatrix} \sqrt{|\lambda_1|} \\ \sqrt{|\lambda_2|} \end{pmatrix} \right\|$$
 (F.1.5.4)

$$= \sqrt{|\lambda_1| + |\lambda_2|} = \|\mathbf{n_2}\| \tag{F.1.5.5}$$

It is easy to verify that

$$\mathbf{n_1}^{\mathsf{T}} \mathbf{n_2} = |\lambda_1| - |\lambda_2| \tag{F.1.5.6}$$

Thus, the angle between the asymptotes is obtained from (F.1.5.3) as (F.1.5.1).

### F.2. Intersection of Conics

F.2.1. Let

$$\mathbf{x}^{\mathsf{T}}\mathbf{V}_{i}\mathbf{x} + 2\mathbf{u}_{i}^{\mathsf{T}}\mathbf{x} + f_{i} = 0, \quad i = 1, 2$$
 (F.2.1.1)

be the equation of two conics. The locus of their intersection is a pair of straight lines if

$$\begin{vmatrix} \mathbf{V}_1 + \mu \mathbf{V}_2 & \mathbf{u}_1 + \mu \mathbf{u}_2 \\ (\mathbf{u}_1 + \mu \mathbf{u}_2)^\top & f \end{vmatrix} = 0, |\mathbf{V}_1 + \mu \mathbf{V}_2| < 0$$
 (F.2.1.2)

*Proof.* The intersection of the conics in (F.2.1.1) is given by the curve

$$\mathbf{x}^{\top} (\mathbf{V}_1 + \mu \mathbf{V}_2) \mathbf{x} + 2 (\mathbf{u}_1 + \mu \mathbf{u}_2)^{\top} \mathbf{x} + f_1 + \mu f_2 = 0,$$
 (F.2.1.3)

which, from Theorem F.1.3 represents a pair of straight lines if (F.2.1.2) is satisfied.

F.2.2. The points of intersection of the conics in (F.2.1.1) are the points of the intersection of the lines in (F.2.1.3).

#### F.3. Chords of a Conic

F.3.1. The points of intersection of the line

$$L: \quad \mathbf{x} = \mathbf{h} + \mu \mathbf{m} \quad \mu \in \mathbb{R} \tag{F.3.1.1}$$

with the conic section in (D.1.2.1) are given by

$$\mathbf{x}_i = \mathbf{h} + \mu_i \mathbf{m} \tag{F.3.1.2}$$

263

where

$$\mu_{i} = \frac{1}{\mathbf{m}^{\top} \mathbf{V} \mathbf{m}} \left( -\mathbf{m}^{\top} \left( \mathbf{V} \mathbf{h} + \mathbf{u} \right) \right)$$

$$\pm \sqrt{\left[ \mathbf{m}^{\top} \left( \mathbf{V} \mathbf{h} + \mathbf{u} \right) \right]^{2} - g\left( \mathbf{h} \right) \left( \mathbf{m}^{\top} \mathbf{V} \mathbf{m} \right)} \right) \quad (F.3.1.3)$$

*Proof.* Substituting (F.3.1.1) in (D.1.2.1),

$$(\mathbf{h} + \mu \mathbf{m})^{\mathsf{T}} \mathbf{V} (\mathbf{h} + \mu \mathbf{m}) + 2\mathbf{u}^{\mathsf{T}} (\mathbf{h} + \mu \mathbf{m}) + f = 0$$
 (F.3.1.4)

$$\implies \mu^2 \mathbf{m}^{\top} \mathbf{V} \mathbf{m} + 2\mu \mathbf{m}^{\top} (\mathbf{V} \mathbf{h} + \mathbf{u}) + \mathbf{h}^{\top} \mathbf{V} \mathbf{h} + 2\mathbf{u}^{\top} \mathbf{h} + f = 0$$
 (F.3.1.5)

or, 
$$\mu^2 \mathbf{m}^\top \mathbf{V} \mathbf{m} + 2\mu \mathbf{m}^\top (\mathbf{V} \mathbf{h} + \mathbf{u}) + g(\mathbf{h}) = 0$$
 (F.3.1.6)

for g defined in (D.1.2.1). Solving the above quadratic in (F.3.1.6) yields (F.3.1.3).  $\Box$ 

F.3.2. If L in (F.3.1.1) touches (D.1.2.1) at exactly one point  $\mathbf{q}$ ,

$$\mathbf{m}^{\top} \left( \mathbf{V} \mathbf{q} + \mathbf{u} \right) = 0 \tag{F.3.2.1}$$

*Proof.* In this case, (F.3.1.6) has exactly one root. Hence, in (F.3.1.3)

$$\left[\mathbf{m}^{\top} \left(\mathbf{V}\mathbf{q} + \mathbf{u}\right)\right]^{2} - \left(\mathbf{m}^{\top}\mathbf{V}\mathbf{m}\right)g\left(\mathbf{q}\right) = 0$$
 (F.3.2.2)

 $\therefore$  **q** is the point of contact,

$$g(\mathbf{q}) = 0 \tag{F.3.2.3}$$

Substituting (F.3.2.3) in (F.3.2.2) and simplifying, we obtain (F.3.2.1).  $\Box$ 

F.3.3. The length of the chord in (F.3.1.1) is given by

$$\frac{2\sqrt{\left[\mathbf{m}^{\top}\left(\mathbf{V}\mathbf{h}+\mathbf{u}\right)\right]^{2}-\left(\mathbf{h}^{\top}\mathbf{V}\mathbf{h}+2\mathbf{u}^{\top}\mathbf{h}+f\right)\left(\mathbf{m}^{\top}\mathbf{V}\mathbf{m}\right)}}{\mathbf{m}^{\top}\mathbf{V}\mathbf{m}}\left\|\mathbf{m}\right\|$$
(F.3.3.1)

*Proof.* The distance between the points in (F.3.1.2) is given by

$$\|\mathbf{x}_1 - \mathbf{x}_2\| = |\mu_1 - \mu_2| \|\mathbf{m}\|$$
 (F.3.3.2)

Substituing 
$$\mu_i$$
 from (F.3.1.3) in (F.3.3.2) yields (F.3.3.1).

F.3.4. The affine transform for the conic section, preserves the norm. This implies that the length of any chord of a conic is invariant to translation and/or rotation.

Proof. Let

$$\mathbf{x}_i = \mathbf{P}\mathbf{y}_i + \mathbf{c} \tag{F.3.4.1}$$

be any two points on the conic. Then the distance between the points is given by

$$\|\mathbf{x}_1 - \mathbf{x}_2\| = \|\mathbf{P}(\mathbf{y}_1 - \mathbf{y}_2)\|$$
 (F.3.4.2)

which can be expressed as

$$\|\mathbf{x}_1 - \mathbf{x}_2\|^2 = (\mathbf{y}_1 - \mathbf{y}_2)^{\top} \mathbf{P}^{\top} \mathbf{P} (\mathbf{y}_1 - \mathbf{y}_2)$$
 (F.3.4.3)

$$= \left\| \mathbf{y}_1 - \mathbf{y}_2 \right\|^2 \tag{F.3.4.4}$$

since

$$\mathbf{P}^{\mathsf{T}}\mathbf{P} = \mathbf{I} \tag{F.3.4.5}$$

F.3.5. For the standard hyperbola/ellipse, the length of the major axis is

$$2\sqrt{\left|\frac{f_0}{\lambda_1}\right|}\tag{F.3.5.1}$$

and the minor axis is

$$2\sqrt{\left|\frac{f_0}{\lambda_2}\right|}\tag{F.3.5.2}$$

*Proof.* Since the major axis passes through the origin,

$$\mathbf{q} = \mathbf{0} \tag{F.3.5.3}$$

Further, from Corollary (E.1.2),

$$\mathbf{m} = \mathbf{e}_2, \tag{F.3.5.4}$$

and from (D.3.1.1),

$$\mathbf{V} = \frac{\mathbf{D}}{f_0}, \mathbf{u} = 0, f = -1$$
 (F.3.5.5)

Substituting the above in (F.3.3.1),

$$\frac{2\sqrt{\mathbf{e}_{1}^{\top}\frac{\mathbf{D}}{f_{0}}\mathbf{e}_{1}}}{\mathbf{e}_{1}^{\top}\frac{\mathbf{D}}{f_{0}}\mathbf{e}_{1}}\|\mathbf{e}_{1}\| \tag{F.3.5.6}$$

yielding (F.3.5.1). Similarly, for the minor axis, the only different parameter is

$$\mathbf{m} = \mathbf{e}_2,\tag{F.3.5.7}$$

Substituting the above in (F.3.3.1),

$$\frac{2\sqrt{\mathbf{e}_{2}^{\top}\frac{\mathbf{D}}{f_{0}}\mathbf{e}_{2}}}{\mathbf{e}_{2}^{\top}\frac{\mathbf{D}}{f_{0}}\mathbf{e}_{2}}\|\mathbf{e}_{2}\| \tag{F.3.5.8}$$

yielding (F.3.5.2).

F.3.6. The latus rectum of a conic section is the chord that passes through the focus and is

perpendicular to the major axis. The length of the latus rectum for a conic is given

by

$$l = \begin{cases} 2\frac{\sqrt{|f_0\lambda_1|}}{\lambda_2} & e \neq 1\\ \frac{\eta}{\lambda_2} & e = 1 \end{cases}$$
 (F.3.6.1)

*Proof.* The latus rectum is perpendicular to the major axis for the standard conic. Hence, from Corollary (E.1.2),

267

$$\mathbf{m} = \mathbf{e}_2, \tag{F.3.6.2}$$

,

Since it passes through the focus, from (D.3.3.3)

$$\mathbf{q} = \mathbf{F} = \pm e \sqrt{\frac{f_0}{\lambda_2 (1 - e^2)}} \mathbf{e}_1$$
 (F.3.6.3)

for the standard hyperbola/ellipse. Also, from (D.3.1.1),

$$\mathbf{V} = \frac{\mathbf{D}}{f_0}, \mathbf{u} = 0, f = -1$$
 (F.3.6.4)

Substituting the above in (F.3.3.1),

$$\frac{2\sqrt{\left[\mathbf{e}_{2}^{\top}\left(\frac{\mathbf{D}}{f_{0}}e\sqrt{\frac{f_{0}}{\lambda_{2}(1-e^{2})}}\mathbf{e}_{1}\right)\right]^{2}-\left(e\sqrt{\frac{f_{0}}{\lambda_{2}(1-e^{2})}}\mathbf{e}_{1}^{\top}\frac{\mathbf{D}}{f_{0}}e\sqrt{\frac{f_{0}}{\lambda_{2}(1-e^{2})}}\mathbf{e}_{1}-1\right)\left(\mathbf{e}_{2}^{\top}\frac{\mathbf{D}}{f_{0}}\mathbf{e}_{2}\right)}{\mathbf{e}_{2}^{\top}\frac{\mathbf{D}}{f_{0}}\mathbf{e}_{2}}\|\mathbf{e}_{2}\|$$
(F.3.6.5)

Since

$$\mathbf{e}_{2}^{\top} \mathbf{D} \mathbf{e}_{1} = 0, \mathbf{e}_{1}^{\top} \mathbf{D} \mathbf{e}_{1} = \lambda_{1}, \mathbf{e}_{1}^{\top} \mathbf{e}_{1} = 1, \|\mathbf{e}_{2}\| = 1, \mathbf{e}_{2}^{\top} \mathbf{D} \mathbf{e}_{2} = \lambda_{2},$$
 (F.3.6.6)

(F.3.6.5) can be expressed as

$$\frac{2\sqrt{\left(1 - \frac{\lambda_1 e^2}{\lambda_2 (1 - e^2)}\right) \left(\frac{\lambda_2}{f_0}\right)}}{\frac{\lambda_2}{f_0}} \qquad (F.3.6.7)$$

$$= 2\frac{\sqrt{f_0 \lambda_1}}{\lambda_2} \qquad (\because e^2 = 1 - \frac{\lambda_1}{\lambda_2}) \qquad (F.3.6.8)$$

$$=2\frac{\sqrt{f_0\lambda_1}}{\lambda_2} \qquad \left(\because e^2 = 1 - \frac{\lambda_1}{\lambda_2}\right) \tag{F.3.6.8}$$

For the standard parabola, the parameters in (F.3.3.1) are

$$\mathbf{q} = \mathbf{F} = -\frac{\eta}{4\lambda_2} \mathbf{e}_1, \mathbf{m} = \mathbf{e}_1, \mathbf{V} = \mathbf{D}, \mathbf{u} = \frac{\eta}{2} \mathbf{e}_1^{\mathsf{T}}, f = 0$$
 (F.3.6.9)

Substituting the above in (F.3.3.1), the length of the latus rectum can be expressed as

$$\frac{2\sqrt{\left[\mathbf{e}_{2}^{\top}\left(\mathbf{D}\left(-\frac{\eta}{4\lambda_{2}}\mathbf{e}_{1}\right)+\frac{\eta}{2}\mathbf{e}_{1}\right)\right]^{2}-\left(\left(-\frac{\eta}{4\lambda_{2}}\mathbf{e}_{1}\right)^{\top}\mathbf{D}\left(-\frac{\eta}{4\lambda_{2}}\mathbf{e}_{1}\right)+2\frac{\eta}{2}\mathbf{e}_{1}^{\top}\left(-\frac{\eta}{4\lambda_{2}}\mathbf{e}_{1}\right)\right)\left(\mathbf{e}_{2}^{\top}\mathbf{D}\mathbf{e}_{2}\right)}{\mathbf{e}_{2}^{\top}\mathbf{D}\mathbf{e}_{2}}\|\mathbf{e}_{2}\|$$
(F.3.6.10)

Since

$$\mathbf{e}_{2}^{\mathsf{T}}\mathbf{D}\mathbf{e}_{1} = 0, \mathbf{e}_{2}^{\mathsf{T}}\mathbf{e}_{2} = 0, \mathbf{e}_{1}^{\mathsf{T}}\mathbf{D}\mathbf{e}_{1} = 0, \mathbf{e}_{1}^{\mathsf{T}}\mathbf{e}_{1} = 1, \|\mathbf{e}_{1}\| = 1, \mathbf{e}_{2}^{\mathsf{T}}\mathbf{D}\mathbf{e}_{2} = \lambda_{2},$$
 (F.3.6.11)

(F.3.6.10) can be expressed as

$$2\frac{\sqrt{\frac{\eta^2}{4\lambda_2}\lambda_2}}{\lambda_2} = \frac{\eta}{\lambda_2} \tag{F.3.6.12}$$

## F.4. Tangent and Normal

F.4.1. Given the point of contact  $\mathbf{q}$ , the equation of a tangent to (D.1.2.1) is

$$(\mathbf{V}\mathbf{q} + \mathbf{u})^{\top} \mathbf{x} + \mathbf{u}^{\top} \mathbf{q} + f = 0$$
 (F.4.1.1)

*Proof.* The normal vector is obtained from (F.3.2.1) and (A.1.20.1) as

$$\kappa \mathbf{n} = \mathbf{V} \mathbf{q} + \mathbf{u}, \kappa \in \mathbb{R} \tag{F.4.1.2}$$

From (F.4.1.2) and (C.1.2.1), the equation of the tangent is

$$(\mathbf{V}\mathbf{q} + \mathbf{u})^{\top} (\mathbf{x} - \mathbf{q}) = 0$$
 (F.4.1.3)

$$\implies (\mathbf{V}\mathbf{q} + \mathbf{u})^{\top} \mathbf{x} - \mathbf{q}^{\top} \mathbf{V} \mathbf{q} - \mathbf{u}^{\top} \mathbf{q} = 0$$
 (F.4.1.4)

which, upon substituting from (F.3.2.3) and simplifying yields (F.4.1.1)

F.4.2. Given the point of contact  $\mathbf{q}$ , the equation of the normal to (D.1.2.1) is

$$(\mathbf{V}\mathbf{q} + \mathbf{u})^{\top} \mathbf{R} (\mathbf{x} - \mathbf{q}) = 0$$
 (F.4.2.1)

*Proof.* The direction vector of the tangent is obtained from (F.4.1.2) as as

$$\mathbf{m} = \mathbf{R} \left( \mathbf{V} \mathbf{q} + \mathbf{u} \right), \tag{F.4.2.2}$$

where  $\mathbf{R}$  is the rotation matrix. From (F.4.2.2) and (C.1.2.1), the equation of the normal is given by (F.4.2.1)

#### F.4.3. Given the tangent

$$\mathbf{n}^{\top}\mathbf{x} = c, \tag{F.4.3.1}$$

the point of contact to the conic in (D.1.2.1) is given by

$$\begin{pmatrix} \mathbf{n}^{\top} \\ \mathbf{m}^{\top} \mathbf{V} \end{pmatrix} \mathbf{q} = \begin{pmatrix} c \\ -\mathbf{m}^{\top} \mathbf{u} \end{pmatrix}$$
 (F.4.3.2)

Proof. From (F.3.2.1),

$$\mathbf{m}^{\top}(\mathbf{V}\mathbf{q} + \mathbf{u}) = 0 \tag{F.4.3.3}$$

$$\implies \mathbf{m}^{\mathsf{T}} \mathbf{V} \mathbf{q} = -\mathbf{m}^{\mathsf{T}} \mathbf{u} \tag{F.4.3.4}$$

Combining (F.4.3.1) and (F.4.3.4), (F.4.3.2) is obtained.

F.4.4. If  $V^{-1}$  exists, given the normal vector  $\mathbf{n}$ , the tangent points of contact to (D.1.2.1) are given by

$$\mathbf{q}_{i} = \mathbf{V}^{-1} \left( \kappa_{i} \mathbf{n} - \mathbf{u} \right), i = 1, 2$$
where  $\kappa_{i} = \pm \sqrt{\frac{f_{0}}{\mathbf{n}^{\top} \mathbf{V}^{-1} \mathbf{n}}}$ 
(F.4.4.1)

Proof. From (F.4.1.2),

$$\mathbf{q} = \mathbf{V}^{-1} (\kappa \mathbf{n} - \mathbf{u}), \quad \kappa \in \mathbb{R}$$
 (F.4.4.2)

Substituting (F.4.4.2) in (F.3.2.3),

$$(\kappa \mathbf{n} - \mathbf{u})^{\mathsf{T}} \mathbf{V}^{-1} (\kappa \mathbf{n} - \mathbf{u}) + 2\mathbf{u}^{\mathsf{T}} \mathbf{V}^{-1} (\kappa \mathbf{n} - \mathbf{u}) + f = 0$$
 (F.4.4.3)

$$\implies \kappa^2 \mathbf{n}^\top \mathbf{V}^{-1} \mathbf{n} - \mathbf{u}^\top \mathbf{V}^{-1} \mathbf{u} + f = 0$$
 (F.4.4.4)

or, 
$$\kappa = \pm \sqrt{\frac{f_0}{\mathbf{n}^{\top} \mathbf{V}^{-1} \mathbf{n}}}$$
 (F.4.4.5)

Substituting (F.4.4.5) in (F.4.4.2) yields (F.4.4.1).

F.4.5. For a conic/hyperbola, a line with normal vector **n** cannot be a tangent if

$$\frac{\mathbf{u}^{\top} \mathbf{V}^{-1} \mathbf{u} - f}{\mathbf{n}^{\top} \mathbf{V}^{-1} \mathbf{n}} < 0 \tag{F.4.5.1}$$

F.4.6. For a circle,

$$\mathbf{q}_{ij} = \left(\pm r \frac{\mathbf{n}_j}{\|\mathbf{n}_j\|} - \mathbf{u}\right), \quad i, j = 1, 2$$
 (F.4.6.1)

*Proof.* From (F.4.4.1), and (D.2.2.1),

$$\kappa_{ij} = \pm \frac{r}{\|\mathbf{n}_j\|} \tag{F.4.6.2}$$

F.4.7. If V is not invertible, given the normal vector  $\mathbf{n}$ , the point of contact to (D.1.2.1) is given by the matrix equation

$$\begin{pmatrix} (\mathbf{u} + \kappa \mathbf{n})^{\top} \\ \mathbf{V} \end{pmatrix} \mathbf{q} = \begin{pmatrix} -f \\ \kappa \mathbf{n} - \mathbf{u} \end{pmatrix}$$
 (F.4.7.1)

where 
$$\kappa = \frac{\mathbf{p}_1^{\mathsf{T}} \mathbf{u}}{\mathbf{p}_1^{\mathsf{T}} \mathbf{n}}, \quad \mathbf{V} \mathbf{p}_1 = 0$$
 (F.4.7.2)

*Proof.* If **V** is non-invertible, it has a zero eigenvalue. If the corresponding eigenvector is  $\mathbf{p}_1$ , then,

$$\mathbf{V}\mathbf{p}_1 = 0 \tag{F.4.7.3}$$

From (F.4.1.2),

$$\kappa \mathbf{n} = \mathbf{V}\mathbf{q} + \mathbf{u}, \quad \kappa \in \mathbb{R}$$
 (F.4.7.4)

$$\implies \kappa \mathbf{p}_1^{\mathsf{T}} \mathbf{n} = \mathbf{p}_1^{\mathsf{T}} \mathbf{V} \mathbf{q} + \mathbf{p}_1^{\mathsf{T}} \mathbf{u} \tag{F.4.7.5}$$

or, 
$$\kappa \mathbf{p}_1^{\mathsf{T}} \mathbf{n} = \mathbf{p}_1^{\mathsf{T}} \mathbf{u}, \quad :: \mathbf{p}_1^{\mathsf{T}} \mathbf{V} = 0, \quad (\text{ from } (\text{F.4.7.3}))$$
 (F.4.7.6)

yielding  $\kappa$  in (F.4.7.2). From (F.4.7.4),

$$\kappa \mathbf{q}^{\mathsf{T}} \mathbf{n} = \mathbf{q}^{\mathsf{T}} \mathbf{V} \mathbf{q} + \mathbf{q}^{\mathsf{T}} \mathbf{u} \tag{F.4.7.7}$$

$$\implies \kappa \mathbf{q}^{\mathsf{T}} \mathbf{n} = -f - \mathbf{q}^{\mathsf{T}} \mathbf{u} \quad \text{from (F.3.2.3)},$$
 (F.4.7.8)

or, 
$$(\kappa \mathbf{n} + \mathbf{u})^{\mathsf{T}} \mathbf{q} = -f$$
 (F.4.7.9)

(F.4.7.4) can be expressed as

$$\mathbf{Vq} = \kappa \mathbf{n} - \mathbf{u}.\tag{F.4.7.10}$$

$$(F.4.7.9)$$
 and  $(F.4.7.10)$  clubbed together result in  $(F.4.7.1)$ .

F.4.8. A point **h** lies on a tangent to the conic in (D.1.2.1) if

$$\mathbf{m}^{\top} \left[ (\mathbf{V}\mathbf{h} + \mathbf{u}) (\mathbf{V}\mathbf{h} + \mathbf{u})^{\top} - \mathbf{V}g(\mathbf{h}) \right] \mathbf{m} = 0$$
 (F.4.8.1)

*Proof.* From (F.3.1.3) and (F.3.2.2)

$$\left[\mathbf{m}^{\top} \left(\mathbf{V}\mathbf{h} + \mathbf{u}\right)\right]^{2} - \left(\mathbf{m}^{\top}\mathbf{V}\mathbf{m}\right)g\left(\mathbf{h}\right) = 0$$
 (F.4.8.2)

yielding (F.4.8.1). 
$$\Box$$

F.4.9. The normal vectors of the tangents to the conic in (D.1.2.1) from a point **h** are given by

$$\mathbf{n}_{1} = \mathbf{P} \begin{pmatrix} \sqrt{|\lambda_{1}|} \\ \sqrt{|\lambda_{2}|} \end{pmatrix}$$

$$\mathbf{n}_{2} = \mathbf{P} \begin{pmatrix} \sqrt{|\lambda_{1}|} \\ -\sqrt{|\lambda_{2}|} \end{pmatrix}$$
(F.4.9.1)

where  $\lambda_i, \mathbf{P}$  are the eigenparameters of

$$\Sigma = (\mathbf{V}\mathbf{h} + \mathbf{u}) (\mathbf{V}\mathbf{h} + \mathbf{u})^{\top} - (g(\mathbf{h})) \mathbf{V}.$$
 (F.4.9.2)

*Proof.* From (F.4.8.1) we obtain (F.4.9.2). Consequently, from (F.1.5.2), (F.4.9.1) can be obtained.  $\Box$ 

F.4.10. A point **h** lies on a normal to the conic in (D.1.2.1) if

$$\left(\mathbf{m}^{\top}(\mathbf{V}\mathbf{h} + \mathbf{u})\right)^{2} \left(\mathbf{n}^{\top}\mathbf{V}\mathbf{n}\right) - 2\left(\mathbf{m}^{\top}\mathbf{V}\mathbf{n}\right) \left(\mathbf{m}^{\top}(\mathbf{V}\mathbf{h} + \mathbf{u})\mathbf{n}^{\top}(\mathbf{V}\mathbf{h} + \mathbf{u})\right) + g\left(\mathbf{h}\right) \left(\mathbf{m}^{\top}\mathbf{V}\mathbf{n}\right)^{2} = 0 \quad (F.4.10.1)$$

*Proof.* The point of contact for the normal passing through a point  $\mathbf{h}$  is given by

$$\mathbf{q} = \mathbf{h} + \mu \mathbf{n} \tag{F.4.10.2}$$

From (F.3.2.1), the tangent at  $\mathbf{q}$  satisfies

$$\mathbf{m}^{\mathsf{T}}(\mathbf{V}\mathbf{q} + \mathbf{u}) = 0 \tag{F.4.10.3}$$

Substituting (F.4.10.2) in (F.4.10.3),

$$\mathbf{m}^{\top}(\mathbf{V}(\mathbf{h} + \mu\mathbf{n}) + \mathbf{u}) = 0 \tag{F.4.10.4}$$

$$\implies \mu \mathbf{m}^{\top} \mathbf{V} \mathbf{n} = -\mathbf{m}^{\top} (\mathbf{V} \mathbf{h} + \mathbf{u}) \tag{F.4.10.5}$$

yielding

$$\mu = -\frac{\mathbf{m}^{\top}(\mathbf{V}\mathbf{h} + \mathbf{u})}{\mathbf{m}^{\top}\mathbf{V}\mathbf{n}},$$
 (F.4.10.6)

From (F.3.1.6),

$$\mu^{2} \mathbf{n}^{\mathsf{T}} \mathbf{V} \mathbf{n} + 2\mu \mathbf{n}^{\mathsf{T}} (\mathbf{V} \mathbf{h} + \mathbf{u}) + g(\mathbf{h}) = 0$$
 (F.4.10.7)

From (F.4.10.6), (F.4.10.7) can be expressed as

$$\left(-\frac{\mathbf{m}^{\top}(\mathbf{V}\mathbf{h} + \mathbf{u})}{\mathbf{m}^{\top}\mathbf{V}\mathbf{n}}\right)^{2}\mathbf{n}^{\top}\mathbf{V}\mathbf{n} + 2\left(-\frac{\mathbf{m}^{\top}(\mathbf{V}\mathbf{h} + \mathbf{u})}{\mathbf{m}^{\top}\mathbf{V}\mathbf{n}}\right)\mathbf{n}^{\top}(\mathbf{V}\mathbf{h} + \mathbf{u}) + g(\mathbf{h}) = 0$$
(F.4.10.8)

yielding (F.4.10.1). 
$$\Box$$